

Da7ee-7Englizzy

في
اللغة الانجليزية

2026

English & Around The World In Eighty Days

الفصل الدراسي الثاني

2

ثانوي

Mrs.

Shaimaa Farghally

انجليزي بقعد في الدماغ



TABLE OF CONTENTS

01

Unit 7 04

Caring Communities

02

Unit 8 48

Creating a Better Community

03

Unit 9 89

When Art Speaks

04

Review 3 124

Based On Units 07 , 08 , 09

05

Unit 10 130

Find Your Passion!

06

Unit 11 168

Healthy Choices , Healthy Life

07

Unit 12 203

Time Habits & Punctuality

08

Review 4 239

Based On Units 10 , 11 , 12

09

Story 246

Around The World In Eighty Days

Da7ee-7Englizzy

في
اللة الانجليزية

Unit 7 Caring Communities



Mrs.

Shaimaa Farghally

انجليزي بقعد في الاماغ



Part One: Lessons 1 & 2

KEY VOCABULARY

belong (to) (v.)	ينتمي إلى / يخص	encourage (v.)	يشجع
belonging (n.)	الانتماء	encouragement (n.)	تشجيع
confidence (n.)	ثقة	fair (adj.) (n.)	عادل / جميل / معرض
confident (adj.)	واثق	fairness (n.)	العدالة
cooperate (v.)	يتعاون	include (v.)	يتضمن / يشمل
cooperation (n.)	التعاون	inclusive (adj.)	شامل
cooperative (adj.)	متعاون	invite (v.)	يدعو
diverse (adj.)	متنوع	value (v.) (n.)	يقدر / قيمة
diversity (n.)	التنوع	valued (adj.)	مقدّر / ذو قيمة

DEFINITIONS:

inclusive شامل	all people included; creating a friendly, welcoming place
valued مقدّر / ذو قيمة	given importance or respect
diversity تنوع	different backgrounds or abilities
fairness العدالة	treating people equally
cooperation تعاون	working together peacefully
encourage يشجع	to give support ,confidence ,or hope to someone
confident واثق	Feeling or showing certainty about something;self-assured
invite يدعو	to ask someone to come somewhere or to do something
include يتضمن / يشمل	to make someone or something part of a group or total .
belong ينتمي الى / يخص	to be a member of a particular group or organization to feel comfortable and accepted.



EXTRA VOCABULARY

ability	قُدرة	celebrate	يُحَيِّي / يَحْتَفِل	appreciate	يُقَدِّر
certain	مُتَأَكِّد	background	خَلْفِيَّة	challenge	تَحَدِّ
caring	داعم	chance	فُرْصة	community	مُجْتَمَع
participate	يُشَارِك	compete	يَتَنَافَس	particular	مُحَدَّد
competitive	تنافسي	personality	شَخْصِيَّة	conflict	نِزَاع / خِلَاف
playground	مَلْعَب	confused	مُرْتَبِك \ يشعر بالحيرة	prepare	يُعِدُّ / يَخْضُر
corner	زاوِية	purpose	غَرَض	create	يَخْلُق
respected	مُحْتَرَم	empathy	تَعَاظُف	responsibility	مَسْؤُولِيَّة
equipment	مُعَدَّات	safe	أَمِن	fairly	بِعَدَالَة
self-assured	واثق \ مُتَأَكِّد	hope	يَأْمَل / أَمَل	silence	صَمْت
immediately	فَوْرًا / فِي الْحَال	skill	مَهَارَة	lead	يَقُود
slides	زَحَالِيْق	left out	مُسْتَبْعَد / مُهْمَل	space	مَكَان / فِضَاء
member	عَضْو	support	يَدْعِم / دَعْم	mixed groups	مُجْمُوعَات مُخْتَلِطَة
swing	أَرْجُوْحة	noisy	صَاخِب	unsure	غَيْر مُتَأَكِّد
offer	يُقَدِّم / يَغْزِض	value	قِيَمَة	organization	مَنْظَمَة
		welcome	مُرْحَب بِهِ / يَرْحَب		

SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS

Word

encourage

يشجع

confident

واثق

inclusive

شامل

Synonyms

inspire/ motivate/
stimulate

certain/ Self-assured

comprehensive /overall

Antonyms

discourage/dishearten

يُحْبِط

uncertain/doubtful/hesitant

متردد / غير واثق / غير متأكد

exclusive/restricted/limited

محدود / مُقَيَّد / حصري

**valued**

موضع تقدير واحترام

appreciated/esteemed

disrespected/worthless

بلا قيمة / غير محترم

appreciate

يقدر

admire / value/ regard

underrate/belittle/underestimate

يُقلل من تقدير/ يُحقّر/ يُقلل من قيمة

diversity

تنوع

difference / variety

likeness/similarity

تشابه

fairness

العدل

equity/ justice

dishonesty/injustice

ظلم / عدم الأمانة

cooperation

التعاون

collaboration / participation

hindrance/disagreement

خلاف / عائق

include

يتضمن

involve/constitute/ contain

exclude/omit

يحذف / يستبعد

lead

يقود

direct/ conduct/ guide

mislead/follow

يتبع / يضل

EXPRESSIONS, PHRASES, IDIOMS & PREPOSITIONS

appreciate diversity

يُقدر التنوع

make an effort

ي بذل جهدا

build friendship

يُبنى صداقة

make..... stronger

يجعل.....أقوي

feel ignored

يشعر بالتجاهل

play a role

يلعب دورا

feel valued

يشعر بالتقدير

Show certainty

يظهر التأكد

follow rules

يتبع القواعد

stand alone

يقف وحيداً

good at

ماهر في

take turns

يتناوب \ يتبادل الأدوار

leave out

يحذف

take the ball

يأخذ الكرة

left out

مستبعد \ مُهمل

work together

يعمل سويا

LANGUAGE NOTES

include, contain, consist of & enclose

include

يشتمل على / يتضمن (جزء من الكل)

EX

The price of the meal includes a drink and dessert.

**contain**

(يحتوي على (بداخل شيء أو وعاء)

EXThis bottle **contains** two liters of fresh orange juice.**consist of**

(يتكون من (جميع الأجزاء المكونة للشيء)

EXThe team **consists of** eleven players and a coach.**enclose**

(يرفق / يحيط بـ (بداخل ظرف أو طرد)

EXPlease find the check **enclosed** with this letter.***diversity, variety, multiplicity & mixture*****diversity**

(تنوع (خاص بالاختلافات الاجتماعية أو الحيوية)

EXThe company is committed to promoting **diversity** in the workplace.**variety**

(تشكيلة / مجموعة متنوعة (أنواع مختلفة من نفس الشيء)

EXThe shop sells a wide **variety** of fresh fruits and vegetables.**multiplicity**

(تعدد / كثرة (التركيز على العدد الكبير)

EXThe new manager faces a **multiplicity** of challenges in his first week.**mixture**

(خليط / مزيج (أشياء ممزوجة ببعضها)

EXThe air was a **mixture** of smoke and car exhaust.***inclusive, comprehensive, exclusive & overall*****inclusive**

(شامل / متضمن (يشمل أشياء محددة في السعر أو المدى)

EXThe rent is 1,000\$ a month, **inclusive** of heating and water.**comprehensive**

(شامل / وافٍ (تغطية كل التفاصيل أو الجوانب بدقة)

EXThe guide provides a **comprehensive** list of all the hotels in the city.**exclusive**

(حصري / مقتصر على (يستثني الآخرين أو خاص بمجموعة معينة)

EXThis is an **exclusive** club only for professional athletes.**overall**

(إجمالي / كلي (بشكل عام أو النتيجة النهائية)

EXThe **overall** cost of the holiday was more than we expected.



experience - experiences - experiment

experience

خبرة عمل (لا تعد)

experiences

تجارب (مواقف في الحياة)

experiment

تجارب علمية

EX They offered me the job because I had a lot of **experience**.

EX I had some interesting **experiences** while I was travelling.

EX Teachers usually carry out simple **experiments** in the laboratory.

respectable - respected - respectful

respectable

محترم (يتفق عليه المجتمع لأن أخلاقه طيبة)

respected

جدير بإعجاب (يحظى بإعجاب الآخرين نتيجة لنجاحه وتفوقه)

respectful

يظهر الاحترام للآخرين

EX He came from a **respectable** middle class family.

EX He is highly **respected** for his fantastic poetry.

EX You must be **respectful** of other people's opinions.

Shaimaa Farghally
Shaimaa Farghally
Shaimaa Farghally



READING

Shaimaa Farghally

A **caring community** is a place where everyone **belongs**, no matter their **background**, abilities, or personalities. One of the best examples of this is a school playground. Every day, students meet, play, and learn how to build friendships. But an **inclusive** playground is more than **swings** and **slides**—it is a space where everyone feels safe, **respected**, and **valued**.

In an inclusive playground, students take turns, share **equipment**, and invite others to join. When a new student arrives or someone is shy, classmates make an effort to speak kindly and offer help. These small actions create a friendly environment where no one feels **left out**. It is also a place where students learn to **appreciate diversity**. Some children may be good at sports, others at drawing, and some may have different needs. When students celebrate these differences, they begin to understand that diversity makes the community stronger.

Teachers also play a role. They encourage students to work in mixed groups so everyone can participate. When **conflicts** happen, they guide students to solve problems fairly. **Fairness** means giving each student a chance to play, listen, speak, or lead. Through these **experiences**, children learn important life skills like empathy, **cooperation**, and responsibility.

Inclusive play and learning prepare students for life. When we include others and treat them with fairness, we help create a community where everyone feels they truly belong.



LISTENING

At school, students enjoy a weekly "**Inclusive Play Hour**". During this time, everyone joins together in the playground. The goal is simple, to make sure every student **feels welcome**. Teachers remind students that games are more fun when everyone **belongs**. Last Tuesday, the students played a team building game called "**Circle Challenge**". In the game, each student had to pass a ball around the circle. However, they could only pass it when another classmate encouraged them by saying, "It's your turn!" This rule helped **shy** students feel more **confident** and **supported**. During the game, a new student named Maya stood quietly at the back. She wasn't sure how to join.

When Hannah noticed her, she waved and said, "Come stand next to me. You're part of our team." The other students smiled and made space for her. Maya felt safe, **included**, and ready to play. By the end of the hour, the whole class learned an important lesson. When we listen, encourage, and take turns, everyone has a place in the community.





KEY VOCABULARY & DEFINITIONS

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The students felt a strong sense of when they all worked together to clean the school garden.
 a conflict b community c society d minority
- 2 The great in our school means we learn about many different traditions.
 a fairness b empathy c cooperation d diversity
- 3 A truly school event has activities suitable for every student.
 a narrow b limited c unfair d inclusive
- 4 The success of the fundraiser was due to the excellent between students and parents.
 a participation b preparation c cooperation d celebration
- 5 Everyone wants to feel they in their classroom.
 a create b belong c confuse d prepare
- 6 A good friend will always you to pursue your dreams.
 a criticize b encourage c discourage d welcome
- 7 He raised his hand to answer with because he had studied well.
 a confidence b hope c silence d challenge
- 8 I would like to you to join our study group after school.
 a include b invite c discourage d invent
- 9 The teacher made sure to examples from many cultures in her lesson.
 a contain b belong c include d exclude
- 10 Everyone wants to to a group where they feel accepted.
 a encourage b belong c invite d hope
- 11 A school must be a physically and emotionally environment for learning.
 a inclusive b limited c unfair d mixed
- 12 The principle of requires that everyone is treated with justice.
 a injustice b fairness c bias d diversity
- 13 means being certain of your abilities or having trust in people, plans, or the future
 a Inclusive b Confused c Confident d Doubtful
- 14 the fact that there are many different backgrounds and abilities .
 a Diversity b Similarity c Fairness d Cooperation



15 is the quality of treating people equally or in a way that is right or reasonable.

- a Injustice b Similarity c Fairness d Cooperation

16 the act of working together peacefully ; joint effort or operation

- a Inclusive b Similarity c Fairness d Cooperation

17 A/ An group or organization tries to include many different types of people and treat them all fairly and equally

- a inclusive b included c Valued d cooperative

18 means being given importance or respect.

- a Inclusive b Included c Valued d Cooperative

EXTRA VOCABULARY

19 When someone helps you, it shows their for your success.

- a hope b support c confidence d value

20 Understanding a classmate's cultural helps us appreciate their perspective.

- a background b fairness c empathy d playground

21 Hansen 's a girl of considerable

- a responsibilities b abilities c personalities d conflicts

22 The cheerful and quiet in our class make every day interesting.

- a backgrounds b equipment c personality d chances

23 A key goal of team projects is to friendship among classmates.

- a create b build c take d feel

24 The art room is a creative where students can express themselves freely.

- a chance b space c conflict d community

25 A person believes in their own abilities without being arrogant.

- a particular b self-assured c comfortable d noisy

26 Mr. Mostafa is a highly teacher

- a left out b distracted c offered d respected

27 Balls, jump ropes, and nets are all examples of sports

- a devises b equipment c backgrounds d personalities

28 To avoid arguments, we should always when using popular games.

- a participate b take turns c create d lead

29 To feel sad and excluded because you weren't invited is to feel

- a respected b safe c left out d prepared



30. We should always the hard work of teachers who help us.
 a celebrate b appreciate c estimate d lead
31. After winning the championship, the team gathered to their victory.
 a appreciate b create c celebrate d offer
32. Working in helps students learn from peers with different strengths.
 a safe spaces b mixed groups c playground equipment d personality types
33. The teacher asked every student to in the class discussion.
 a belong b prepare c participate d lead
34. A disagreement over the rules of a game can lead to a minor
 a agreement b responsibility c background d conflict
35. She divided the cookies so that each friend got the same amount.
 a fairly b safely c inclusively d respectfully
36. The new student was grateful for the to introduce herself to the class.
 a space b conflict c chance d background
37. The project manager will the meeting and keep everyone on track.
 a prepare b belong to c offer d lead
38. It is your to bring your textbook to class every day.
 a ability b personality c responsibility d background
39. in a club can help you develop new skills.
 a Belonging b Celebration c Participation d Equipment
40. His helpful nature is a key part of his friendly
 a background b ability c personality d conflict
41. The school's new policy promotes greater by encouraging students to share their cultural traditions.
 a inclusion b safety c fairness d chance
42. The coach emphasized that good sportsmanship was just as important as winning, teaching a lesson in
 a respect b creation c background d space
43. The lack of on the team led to confusion and a failed project.
 a diversity b leadership c swings d empathy
44. As a of the environmental club, she helps organize clean-up events.
 a classmate b member c organization d student
45. The United Nations is an international that works for peace.
 a member b civilization c organization d community



46 It's important to your friends when they are going through a hard time.

- a hope b support c invite d include

47 Learning a new language is a fun but tough

- a corner b silence c challenge d organization

48 True involves understanding a friend's sadness even if you haven't experienced it yourself.

- a responsibility b empathy c fairness d diversity

SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS

49 The new teaching methods encourage children to think for themselves. The antonyms of the word "encourage" are

- a discourage b dishearten c inspire d urge e motivate

50 She is a confident and practised speaker who always impresses her audience. The antonyms of the word "confident" are

- a positive b convinced c self-assured d unsure e uncertain

51 Our aim is to create a fairer, more inclusive society.. The synonyms of the word "inclusive" are

- a exclusive b biased c restricted d receptive e unbiased

52 Her work was highly valued well beyond the academic community. The synonyms of the word "valued" are

- a regarded b appreciated c despised d detested e loathed

53 There is a wide diversity of opinion on the question of unilateral disarmament. The antonyms of the word "diversity" are

- a likeness b similarity c sameness d difference e variety

54 Any help you could give me would be greatly appreciated. The synonyms of the word "appreciated" are

- a unpleasant b respected c esteemed d disagreeable e objectionable

55 He had a real sense of fairness and hated injustice. The antonyms of the word "fairness" are

- a equity b dishonesty c favoritism d justice e integrity



GRAMMAR

Conditional forms

العمل الشرطية

If

الحالة الصفرية

فكرة 1

If / when

+ مضارع بسيط

+ مضارع بسيط

امتى استخدم الحالة الصفرية :

1 التعبير عن العادات الثابتة أو المواقف لها نتيجة منطقية :

EX If we (visit - will visit) our grandparents, we always have lunch together.

2 التعبير عن الحقائق العامة والحقائق العلمية :

EX If we boil water , it (turns - turn) into steam.

فكرة 2

لاحظ في حالة المبني للمجهول

مفعول

+

am
is
are

+

P.P

نستخدم

EX If water (heats - is heated) , it evaporates.

فكرة 3

إذا لم يأتي
بعدهم مفعولIf
when

+

P.P

تلاحظ أيضا

EX If (frozen - is frozen), water turns into ice.

الحالة الأولى

فكرة 4

للتعبير عن مواقف قابلة
للحدوث في المستقبل

If / unless

+

مضارع بسيط

+

will
can
may - might
must - should

+

inf

EX If he works hard, he ('ll pass- pass) the next exam.



فكرة 5

لاحظ الفرق بين

الحالة الصفرية

حقيقة عامة (لا نحدد وقت معين أو نشير لشيء معين)

الحالة الأولى

موقف محدد (وهنا بنحدد وقت معين) زي :

these

that

this

tonight

today

EX If it rains heavily, streets (become - will become) wet.

EX If it rains heavily tonight. streets (become - will become) wet .

لاحظ هنا استخدام **should** وليس **will**

EX If you want to get high marks, you should study hard.

فكرة 6

'd better → had

'd rather → would

لاحظ

If

+

مضارع بسيط

+

inf – Don't
let's + inf
had better + inf
would rather + inf

لاحظ

(فعل الشرط)

(جواب الشرط)

EX If he phones, (don't - won't) tell him the news.

EX If you are tired, (take - will take) a rest.

EX If you (want - wanted) to succeed, you'd better work hard.

EX If the weather (is - was) windy, I'd rather stay at home.



فكرة 7

If + **would like (love – prefer)** + **will** + **inf.**

مضارع مستمر
مضارع تام

لماذا

EX If you **would like** to attend the party, I **(will go - would go)** with you.

فكرة 8

من الممكن استخدام المضارع المستمر و المضارع التام مكان المضارع البسيط

EX If she **is** revising for her exams, she **won't** go out.

EX If he **has** bought a new car, he **will** drive it to work.

الحالة الثانية

فكرة 9

If / unless + **ماضي بسيط** + **would could might** + **inf**

تستخدم للتعبير عن مواقف تخيلية

EX If he **trained** hard, he **('d win - 'll win)** the match.

EX If he **were** taller, he **'d be** good at basketball. This means he **(is – isn't – was)** tall.

(معناها) انه هو مش طويل دلوقتي

بنستخدم **(were)** مع المفرد في حالة

النصيحة

التخيل

EX If I **were** you, I **would** see a doctor you look very ill. **النصيحة**



فكره 10

أفعال في الماضي
نستخدم حالة ثانية لو الفاعل مفرد
[cut – put – hit – shut – read]

لايف

EX If he read more books, he (would learn - will learn) a lot.

الحاله الثالثه

فكره 11

If + sub + had + P.P , sub + would
could + have + P.P
might

EX If he had won the competition, he ('d have got -'d get) the prize.

تستخدم الحاله الشرطيه الثالثه للتعبير عن:
شيء حدث في الماضي ومن المستحيل تغييره: أي نفترض عكس ما حدث في الماضي

فكره 12

If + had + اسم
had to + inf + would + inf.

لايف

EX If they had more time, they (would visit- would have visited) us.

EX If they had had more time, they (would visit- would have visited) us.

حاله ثانيه

فكره 13

if + ماضي بسيط + would have + اسم
would have to + inf

لايف

EX If she (won - had won) the competition, she would have a prize.

EX If they (traveled - had travelled) abroad, they would have to save more money.



فكره 14

in case في حالة

if

&

in case

لماذا الفرق بين

EX I'll stay at home if it rains .

بقائي في المنزل مرتبط بالمطر (الحدث سيقع إذا توفر شرط معين)

EX I'll stay at home in case it rains.

سنقوم بشيء ما تحسبا لحدوث شيء معين .

EX The referee will wear two watches on both hands (unless - in case of - if - in case) one of them stops. (الفيوم - ايشواي 2024)

فكره 15

If حالات حذف

حذف If الحالة الأولي :

نستخدم بدلا من (If) (should + فاعل + inf)

EX (If - Should) she studies hard, she will succeed.

EX (If - Should) she study hard, she will succeed.

فكره 16

حذف If الحالة الثانية :

were

+

الفاعل

+

صفة
ضمير فاعل
اسم

EX If I were you , I'd help poor people.

EX (were - If) I you, I'd help poor people.



فكرة 17

وقد تحل (were) محل (If) في الحالة الشرطية الثانية إذا لم تكن
فعلاً رئيساً بشرط أن يتبع الفاعل (to + inf)

Were + فاعل + to + inf , would +inf

EX Were they (to play- played) well, they'd win the match. = If they played well,.....

فكرة 18

يمكن أن تحل (Should) محل (If) في الحالة الثانية بشرط أن
يتبعها (فعل في المصدر) :

EX Should he (get - gets up) early, he would catch the early train. = If he got up early,.....

فكرة 19

حذف **If** الحالة الثالثة :

نستخدم بدلاً من **(If)** (Had + subject + p.p)

EX (If -Had - Should) he had arrived early , he would have caught the train.

EX (If - Had - Should) he arrived early , he would have caught the train.

فكرة 20

لاحظ استخدام الآتي كبديل If

As (So) long as / provided (that) / providing (that) / on condition that / only if
ومعناها: مادام / بشرط / شريطة أن..

EX You can borrow my car as long as / providing (that) you promise not to drive too fast.

فكرة 21

يمكن أن تحل (Unless) محل (If...not) في الحالات الشرطية الثلاث والفعل الذي يليها لابد أن
يكون مثبتاً :

EX Unless you (help- don't help) me, I won't pass the exam. (=If you don't help me,.....)

EX Unless you (helped- didn't help) me, I wouldn't pass the exam.
(=If you didn't help me,.....)



EX (Unless- If) he had helped me, I wouldn't have got that job.
= If he hadn't helped me, I wouldn't have got that job.

فكره 22

فد بالك

الحالة الثانية

If it were not for + inf. + ing/n → subj. + would + inf.

الحالة الثالثة

If it hadn't been for + inf. + ing/n → subj. + would have + P.P.....

EX (If it hadn't been for - If it weren't for) his help, I wouldn't have finished the project on time.

لاحظ استخدام
But for+ noun
Without+ noun/ing

EX (Without- Unless) helping me / his help, I wouldn't have got that job.

EX (But for- Unless) his help, I wouldn't have got that job.

فكره 23

بسكوتاية بس ممكن تعورك

If + ing + فعل ,

EX (If - in case of – without) passing your driving test is necessary, you should practice more .

فكره 24

يمكن أن تحل (In case of) محل (If) بشرط أن يتبعها (اسم/ شيء فقط)

EX (In case of- in case) fire, please leave the building as quickly as possible.
(= If there is a fire)

ومعنى المثال: فى حالة الحريق ، غادر المبنى بأسرع ما يمكن. = لو ان هناك حريق.....



فكرة 25

وفي السؤال نستخدم البدائل الآتية

supposing (that) / suppose (that) / assuming / imagine (that)

ومعناها: افترض أن / على فرض أن / تخيل أن وغالبًا ما تحل محل الحالة الشرطية الثانية والثالثة لـ (If):

EX Supposing / Imagine (that) you found a job in Cairo, what would you do?

فكرة 26

if so, if not, otherwise, in which case, in that case...

تستخدم التعبيرات السابقة للإشارة إلى جملة سابقة عليها:

EX Some of you may have already completed section one. **If so**, you can go to section two.

فكرة 27

If necessary لاحظ استخدام

تستخدم للتعبير عن أن الفعل ليس مؤكدًا، بل سيتم فقط عند الضرورة.

EX You may contact the manager **if necessary**.
= You may contact the manager **if it is necessary**.

EXERCISE ON GRAMMAR

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 I'll help you to fix your computer if you me what's wrong with it .
a would tell b told c will tell d tell
- 2 If Nadia at work early tomorrow, she will be able to finish all tasks required.
a arrives b arrived c will arrive d would arrive
- 3 If I were you, I this book .
a Will read b would have read c can read d would read
- 4 If we had a modern car, we able to go to Luxor fast.
a will be b would be c would have been d won't be
- 5 If I lend you some money, it back to me?
a do you give b will you give c you will give d would you give
- 6 How you feel if you won the competition?
a do b are c Would d will
- 7 If I enough money, I would buy a car.
a have b had c have had d have got



- 8 What if it rained next June?
 a will you do b may you do c can you do d would you do
- 9 If you Luxor yesterday, we'd have met there.
 a had visited b visited c were visited d visit
- 10 If you mix yellow and blue, you green.
 a would get b get c will get d got
- 11 If Samy had read that book, he what happened at the end.
 a knew b will know c would know d would have known
- 12 What if you had a million dollars?
 a would you do b will you do c do you do d did you do
- 13 Who would you include in the national team if you Hosam Hassan?
 a are b have been c were d would be
- 15 What you do if you didn't see him today?
 a will b would c did d had
- 16 If it rains , grass wet .
 a gets b got c would get d would have got
- 17 What if ice is heated?
 a happens b is happened c does it happen d it is happened
- 18 If you freeze water, it ice .
 a become b becomes c would become d is becoming
- 19 If it rains tomorrow, we the picnic .
 a had to cancel b cancel c would cancel d will have to cancel
- 20 I at home tonight if the weather wasn't that good.
 a would stay b stayed c will stay d would have stayed
- 21 If you press this button, this machine
 a operates b will operate c would operate d is operated
- 22 Sama would have that medal if she well .
 a play b had played c played d plays
- 23 If I ill, I would join you to the club .
 a were b hadn't be c weren't d had been
- 24 If you needed to find information about a new movie, how it ?
 a would you get b will you get c can you get d you would get
- 25 If you more care, you would have minimized your mistakes .
 a had had b had been c were d had



26. Hatim: What if you lost your passport abroad?
Kamel: I to our embassy there.
a would go b will have gone c will go d must go
27. He on a diet if he wants to lose weight .
a had to go b should go c have gone d will go
28. If this trip cost much money, I join it .
a don't b won't c wouldn't d am not
29. He the story if he read it again.
a will enjoy b would enjoy c will have enjoyed d can enjoy
30. If food is kept in a fridge, it bad .
a would go b will go c doesn't go d don't go
31. If you throw a piece of rock into the sea, it
a floats b would sink c sinks d sank
32. If you heat metal, it expand?
a will b do c does d is
33. If I had time, I'd help you. It means
a I was busy b I'm busy c I'm free d I will help you
34. If I money, I would have a car.
a had b had had c have d am having
35. If I study for long, I always tired and dizzy .
a feel b will feel c felt d would feel
36. If my mother put the plate on the shelf, I it .
a will see b would see c see d would have seen
37. If he cut his finger with that knife, it terribly .
a hurts b will hurt c hurt d would hurt
38. Iron expands if
a it is heat b is heated c it is heated d heating
39. If our food hygienically, we can have some healthy problems .
a doesn't prepare b isn't prepared c prepare d is will prepare
40. I don't have enough money. If I , I would have the ability to help you.
a have b had c had had d have had
41. If we had found him in time, he among us .
a would be b Would have been c won't be d must have



42. If you what I say, ask your mother.
 a won't believe b didn't believe c don't believe d hadn't believed
43. If metals, they contract .
 a cools b cool c cooling d are cooled
44. If you the time of his arrival, please tell me .
 a knew b know c had known d will know
45. If you see an accident, Tamer, an ambulance at once.
 a call b will call c must call d calls
46. It a lot if he hit his finger in the door.
 a hurts b will hurt c hurt d would hurt
47. If it freezes tonight, we heaters out around the orange trees.
 a places b place c are placing d will place
48. If he, he would have to attend the party .
 a had been invited b was invited c invited d had invited
49. If you drop that glass mug, it
 a 'll break b break c 'd break d breaks
50. If I were tall, I would play basketball .this means that I tall .
 a am not b am c was not d was
51. If Salah plays the next match, he will score a goal. The speaker expresses
 a something that always happens b something that is impossible in the future
 c something that is probable in the future d something that is unlikely in the future
52. If the coach had talented players, he the final match .
 a wouldn't have won b would have won c would win d will win
53. If he, he would have gone to the party.
 a had invited b had been invited c were invited d was invited
54. Which of the following ISN'T structurally correct ?
 a If I won't pass the exam, I'd be frustrated. b Unless I passed the exam, I'd be frustrated.
 c If I didn't pass the exam, I'd be frustrated. d If I failed the exam, I'd be frustrated.
55. If I had to get around without a car or bike, it would be really difficult. The speaker expresses
 a something that always happens b something that is probable in the future
 c something that is possible in the future d something that is unlikely in the future
56. They will visit Malak if
 a is necessary b necessary c was necessary d necessity



- 57) They will build a villa if
 a) needs b) is needed c) need d) needed
- 58) If I were a doctor, I would help the injured man. This means that I
 a) wasn't a doctor but I could help the injured man.
 b) am a doctor as I can help the injured man.
 c) can't help the Injured man since I am not a doctor.
 d) wasn't a doctor so I couldn't help the Injured man.
- 59) doing regular exercises, I will be overweight.
 a) Unless b) Without c) If d) As long as
- 60) Unless you had a modern car, you able to go to Alexandria.
 a) will be b) won't be c) wouldn't be d) wouldn't have been
- 61) They wouldn't be in London now they caught the midday plane .
 a) provided that b) in case of c) unless d) without
- 62) If you in a hurry, leave that task for me.
 a) were b) had been c) have d) are
- 63) my teachers' support, I wouldn't have come the first in the final exam.
 a) Unless b) If c) Without d) In case of
- 64) working hard, we can't reach our goals .
 a) As long as b) If c) Without d) In case of
- 65) Rodina wouldn't have been a doctor she had studied hard .
 a) Unless b) If c) Without d) In case of
- 66) you boil water, it turns into vapour .
 a) Unless b) But for c) In case d) Without
- 67) you refused to help me, I wouldn't solve that problem. Many thanks, Hala.
 a) Unless b) If c) In case of d) Without
- 68) I will buy some tablets I feel a headache in the meeting room .
 a) unless b) if c) a & b d) in case of
- 69) You will miss the train you arrive at the station in time .
 a) unless b) if c) In case of d) because
- 70) my friends chosen a better destination, I would have joined them.
 a) Unless b) Had c) In case d) Were
- 71) You can't have a good job good qualifications.
 a) unless b) if c) In case of d) without



72. Soha to read this book, she would get much information.
 a) Should b) If c) Had d) Were
73. I a bird, I would fly.
 a) If b) Had c) Should d) Were
74. he read a lot; he wouldn't have any information.
 a) Should b) Were c) Unless d) If
75. careful, he wouldn't make that silly mistake.
 a) Is he b) Wasn't he c) Were he d) Isn't he
76. hesitate to help anyone as long as you can.
 a) Won't b) To not c) Shouldn't d) Don't
77. Get your umbrella it rains tomorrow.
 a) unless b) as long as c) provides d) in case of
78. He wouldn't agree to do extra tasks without
 a) paying b) being paid c) be paid d) been paid
79. the fireman's efforts, the house would have been burnt .
 a) In case of b) But for c) Provided d) If
80. my primary stage teachers, I wouldn't have learnt how to read and write.
 a) If it weren't for b) If it hadn't been for
 c) Without d) If it hadn't been
81. you were going to open a clothes shop. What kind of clothes would you stock?
 a) Supposed b) Supposes c) Suppose d) Unless

OPERATE YOUR MIND

تقفل عقلك



82. being hardworking is exhausting, I will keep pushing myself to succeed.
 a) If b) In case of c) Unless d) Without
83. I would help you if
 a) was necessary b) necessary
 c) it is necessary d) it had been necessary
84. the boss sees you walking along the coast in working hours?
 a) Unless b) If only c) What if d) I wish
85. he were here now , he could help us with the problem.
 a) What if b) On the condition that
 c) If only d) Thinking



86. If , water boils.
 a) it heats b) heats c) is heated d) heated
87. doing regular exercises benefits me , I will try and do it.
 a) If b) Without c) Unless d) In case of
88. If I had written work, I at once.
 a) will do b) would do
 c) would have done d) did
89. If the money I enough, I'd have lent you some.
 a) had ,had b) had, had had c) had , had been d) have , had been
90. If the mobile I a battery , I'd have called you yesterday..
 a) had ,had b) had, had had c) had , had been d) have , had been
91. We'd better train hard if we to win the match.
 a) had wanted b) wanted c) want d) don't want
92. If I had used clothes, I them the poor.
 a) would donate b) would have donated
 c) will donate d) donated
93. I have to go now I will miss the train.
 a) consequently b) otherwise c) in case of d) but for
93. warned people in time, a lot more lives could have been lost.
 a) Had they not b) Hadn't they c) Unless d) If

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets to give the same meaning:

Basic Ideas

1. I don't have enough money, so I can't buy that car. (If)
2. He didn't study hard, so he failed the exam. (had)
3. You will be late unless you hurry up. (if)
4. I advise you to see a doctor. (were)
5. She didn't arrive on time because she missed the bus. (If)
6. Take your umbrella because it might rain. (case)
7. I will lend you my book, but you must return it tomorrow. (provided)



- 8 Without your help, I couldn't have finished the project. (helped)
- 9 He is very busy, so he doesn't go to the gym. (If)
- 10 Don't shout, or you will wake the baby. (Unless)

Intermediate and Advanced

- 1 If you need any further assistance, please contact us. (Should)
- 2 If I were a billionaire, I would travel around the world. (Were)
- 3 If they had known the truth, they would have been angry. (Had)
- 4 Imagine you won the lottery; what would you do? (Supposing)
- 5 I'll stay at home only if it rains. (long)
- 6 It's possible that he didn't see the message, and that's why he didn't come. (might)
- 7 We can go for a walk, but only if the weather is good. (condition)
- 8 He forgot his keys; otherwise, he wouldn't have climbed through the window. (If)
- 9 If the alarm doesn't go off, I won't wake up on time. (Unless)
- 10 You must leave now, or you will miss your flight. (Otherwise)
- 11 If you need to reach me, I'll be at the hotel. (Should)
- 12 We will go on the picnic only if the sun shines. (provided)
- 13 If the government were to raise taxes, there would be a public outcry. (Were)



Part Two : Lessons 3 & 4

KEY VOCABULARY

address (v.) (n.)	يخاطب / يعالج (قضية)	mediator (n.)	وسيط
argue over (v.)	يجادل بشأن	misunderstand (v.)	يسيء الفهم
argument (n.)	جدال	misunderstanding (n.)	سوء تفاهم
gather (v.)	يجمع / يتجمع	reside (v.)	يسكن
gatherings (n.)	تجمعات / لقاءات	resident (n.)	ساكن / مقيم
handle (v.) (n.)	يتعامل مع / مقبض	resolution (n.)	حل
interrupt (v.)	يقاطع	resolve (v.)	يحل
interruption (n.)	مقاطعة	take on (v.)	يتولى (مسؤولية)

DEFINITIONS:

address	خاطب / يعالج (قضية)	to deal with a problem or try to solve it
argue over	يجادل بشأن	to talk in an angry way because you don't agree about something
gathering	تجمعات	a meeting of people in one place
Gratitude	امتنان / شكر	The quality of being thankful; readiness to show appreciation
handle	يتعامل مع	to deal with a problem or situation
interrupt	يقاطع	to stop someone while they are speaking or doing something .
mediators	وسطاء	people who help both sides solve a disagreement.
Misunderstanding	سوء تفاهم	when people don't understand each other correctly.
resident	ساكن / مقيم	a person who lives in a particular place
resolve	يحل	to find an answer to a problem or disagreement
take on	يتولى (مسؤولية)	accept a job ,task ,or responsibility.



EXTRA VOCABULARY

Farghally

act	عمل / يتصرف	celebration	احتفال	adult	بالغ
challenge	تحدي	appreciation	تقدير	classmate	زميل الدراسة
belong	ينتمي	common	شائع	benefit	يفيد
communicate	يتواصل	care	يعتني / يهتم	community	مجتمع
compete	يتنافس	model	نموذج / قدوة	conflict	نزاع
mood	حالة مزاجية	cooperative	تعاوني	cost	يكلف
organize	ينظم	create	يخلق / ينشئ	patient	صبور
decide	يقرر	perform	يؤدي	decrease	ينخفض
politely	بأدب	disagree	يختلف في الرأي	powerful	قوي
disagreement	خلاف	practice	يمارس	discuss	يناقش
praise	يثني على / يمدح	discuss	يناقش	public	عام
encourage	يشجّع	realize	يدرك	equipment	معدات
recognize	يقدر / يعترف بـ	events	فعاليات	powerful	قوي
express	يعبر	remarkable	ملحوظ / رائع	fair	عادل
respected	محترم	fairly	بإنصاف	respectfully	باحترام
gratitude	امتنان	result	نتيجة	happiness	سعادة
role	دور	ignore	يتجاهل	rule	قاعدة
included	مشمول / مُتضمن	shopkeeper	بائع/صاحب متجر	including	بما في ذلك
show	يظهر / يبين	inclusive	شامل	solution	حل
introduce	يقدم / يطرح	janitor	عامل النظافة	spread	ينتشر
kindness	لطف	transform	يحوّل	local	محلي
neighborhood	حي سكني	sportsmanship	روح رياضية		
valued	مقدّر / ذو قيمة	members	أعضاء		



SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS

Word

Synonyms

Antonyms

misunderstanding

سوء فهم

mistake/misinterpretation/
misreading

understanding/knowledge

معرفة / فهم

conflict

صراع

strife/discord

agreement/peace/harmony

انسجام / سلام / اتفاق

handle

يتعامل

manage/treat/negotiate

mishandle/mess up

يفسد / يُسيء التعامل مع

take on

يقبل / يتحمل مسؤولية

face/accept/undertake

avoid/refuse/reject

يرفض / يرفض / يتجنب

interrupt

يقاطع

interfere/break in/disturb

allow/continue

يستمر / يسمح

gathering

واضح

meeting/ crowd

division/separation

فصل / انقسام

EXPRESSIONS, COLLOCATIONS AND PREPOSITIONS

act of gratitude

عمل من أعمال الامتنان

disagree about

يختلف بشأن

acts of kindness

أعمال صالحة / أفعال خير

praise for

أثنى على / مدح لـ

argue over

يجادل بشأن / يتشاجر حول

transform into

يحول إلى

belong to

ينتمي إلى

over time

بمرور الوقت

by the end of

بحلول نهاية

moods lifted

تحسنت المزجة

care for

يعتني بـ / يهتم بـ

cost nothing

لا يكلف شيئاً

COLLOCATIONS

discuss problems

مناقشة المشكلات

resolve conflicts

يحل النزاعات

explain feelings

شرح المشاعر

take turns

يتناوب / يتبادل الأدوار

express appreciation

يعبر عن التقدير

keep everyone included

الحفاظ على شمول الجميع

find a solution

يجد حلاً

suggest a solution

يقترح حلاً

handle disagreements

يتعامل مع الخلافات

take on the role of

تولي دور

perform one act

يؤدي عملاً واحداً

feel left out

يشعر بأنه مستبعد / مهمل



CONFUSING WORDS

Farghally

argue over	يتجادل حول	ولكن	argue with	يتجادل مع
contact	يتصل	ولكن	communicate with	يتواصل مع
rule	قاعدة	ولكن	role	دور
event	حدث هام	ولكن	incident	حدث في قصة / احداث شغب - نزاع
member	عضو في نادي / اسرة	ولكن	Organ	عضو في الجسم
recommend + v-ing	يوصي بأن	ولكن	recommend + مصدر (should) + فاعل	يوصي بأن
either or	أما أو	ولكن	neither nor	لا ولا
due to + V.ing/N	بسبب	ولكن	due to + مصدر	علي وشك أن يحدث

READING

Resolving Conflicts to Keep Everyone Included

Conflicts happen in every community, including neighborhoods. Children may **argue over** football games in the local park, neighbors may disagree about using shared spaces, or **misunderstandings** can happen during community events. How conflicts are **handled** can make a community stronger and more inclusive.

In a Cairo neighborhood, **residents** noticed that disagreements were common in the local park and during weekend **gatherings**. To **address** this, respected members of the community, such as elders, teachers, and shopkeepers, **took on** the role of **mediators**. They helped people discuss problems calmly and fairly.

For example, two children argued over who would play first in a football match. A local elder listened to both sides, encouraged them to explain their feelings politely, and suggested a solution: taking turns and sharing equipment. Neighbors also learned to communicate **respectfully** when deciding how to care for public spaces, like keeping the park clean or organizing community celebrations.

The **mediators** taught simple rules: listen without **interrupting**, express your feelings politely, and find a solution that benefits everyone. Over time, conflicts decreased, and children and adults felt more included.

The neighborhood realized that **resolving** conflicts respectfully helps everyone feel they belong. Role models – like patient elders, fair shopkeepers, or teachers – show others how to handle disagreements kindly, creating a happier and more cooperative Egyptian community.





LISTENING

Shaimaa Farghally

"At Greenfield School, teachers noticed that students often competed, ignored each other, or felt left out. To change this, Miss Leila introduced a gratitude challenge. She told the students, 'If everyone practices **gratitude**, our school will feel kinder and happier.' The challenge was simple. Each day, students had to **perform** one act of gratitude. Some thanked their friends for helping with homework. Others praised classmates for good **sportsmanship** and a few wrote short notes to janitors. The results were **remarkable**. When students expressed **appreciation**, smiles spread, **moods** lifted, and conflicts decreased. Students felt more included and valued. Miss Leila explained, 'If we recognize and thank even the smallest acts of kindness, we can transform our school into a community where everyone belongs.' By the end of the week, students realize that gratitude is **powerful**. It costs nothing, but it creates happiness for everyone."



KEY VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The principal decided to the issue of bullying during the morning assembly to make the school feel safer.
 - a perform
 - b address
 - c explain
 - d introduce
- 2 When the two friends could not agree on the rules of the game, they asked a trusted teacher to act as a
 - a janitor
 - b classmate
 - c shopkeeper
 - d mediator
- 3 It is quite common for younger siblings to who gets to play with the new sports equipment first.
 - a communicate
 - b compete
 - c argue over
 - d practice
- 4 If you do not listen carefully to the teacher's instructions, you might the goal of the gratitude challenge.
 - a misunderstand
 - b recognize
 - c realize
 - d notice
- 5 The loud about the shared park spaces was finally settled when everyone agreed to follow a new schedule.
 - a sportsmanship
 - b gratitude
 - c argument
 - d celebration
- 6 The conflict between the neighbors started because of a simple about who was responsible for the trash.
 - a challenge
 - b misunderstanding
 - c behavior
 - d conflict



- 7 Every Friday evening, people from the community in the local park to share food and stories.
 a transform b belong c spread d gather
- 8 Although he works in a busy office in Cairo, he prefers to in a quiet neighborhood near the outskirts.
 a reside b perform c practice d handle
- 9 Community like weekend festivals are a great way for new residents to meet their neighbors and make friends.
 a results b notes c moods d gatherings
- 10 Every in the apartment building is responsible for keeping the shared hallways clean and tidy.
 a elder b resident c member d adult
- 11 A good role model knows how to disagreements kindly and fairly.
 a handle b perform c address d thank
- 12 The two families reached a peaceful after they discussed their feelings politely with the help of an elder.
 a resolution b appreciation c homework d result
- 13 It is important to listen carefully and not when someone else is expressing their feelings during a meeting.
 a help b show c interrupt d explain
- 14 The mediators worked hard to the disagreement between the shopkeepers and the local residents.
 a change b resolve c decrease d happen
- 15 The loud noise from the construction site outside was a constant during the students' important exam.
 a act b match c event d interruption
- 16 The brave student decided to the role of mediator to help his classmates solve their problems peacefully.
 a take on b care for c belong to d cost
- 17 is the quality of being thankful and ready to show appreciation.
 a anger b gratitude c pride d sadness

EXTRA VOCABULARY EXERCISES

- 18 Every of kindness helps to make our school a happier place for everyone.
 a rule b act c result d match



- 19 Miss Leila wanted to the problems that she noticed in her classroom.
 a express b praise c explain d address
- 20 The students showed their by writing short notes to the school janitors.
 a appreciation b sportsmanship c equipment d happiness
- 21 Children might over who gets to play first in a football match.
 a communicate b practice c argue d listen
- 22 Learning to resolve a conflict respectfully will every member of the group.
 a include b recognize c praise d benefit
- 23 Neighbors should for the shared spaces to keep the park clean.
 a care b show c share d tell
- 24 The winning team held a big after the football game ended.
 a gathering b event c challenge d celebration
- 25 The gratitude challenge was a simple for the students at Greenfield School.
 a problem b challenge c game d match
- 26 I was very happy when my helped me with my difficult homework.
 a teacher b elder c friend d classmate
- 27 It is for disagreements to happen during community events.
 a common b local c public d simple
- 28 Mediators help people to calmly when they have a misunderstanding.
 a write b play c communicate d practice
- 29 We live in a friendly where neighbors help each other every day.
 a school b community c neighborhood d park
- 30 Students often to see who can perform the most acts of kindness.
 a perform b recognize c address d compete
- 31 A small happened because the children did not want to share the park.
 a disagreement b feelings c conflict d behavior
- 32 The project was successful because the students were very and helpful.
 a cooperative b patient c fair d inclusive
- 33 It does not anything to be kind, but it creates a lot of happiness.
 a cost b create c make d value
- 34 The number of conflicts will if students learn to be kinder to each other.
 a lift b spread c happen d decrease



35. Some neighbors might about how to organize the community celebrations.
 a disagree b argue c feel d express
36. They had a short about who would use the equipment first.
 a result b rule c disagreement d act
37. The teacher helped the students to their feelings politely.
 a teach b discuss c suggest d interrupt
38. We should always our classmates to include everyone in the games.
 a care b organize c resolve d encourage
39. The students used the new sports during their football match.
 a equipment b celebration c gathering d solution
40. It is important to your appreciation when someone helps you.
 a express b practice c recognize d praised
41. The mediator suggested a solution that made both children happy.
 a respected b good c fair d remarkable
42. He felt deep after his classmates praised his good sportsmanship.
 a kindness b mood c conflict d gratitude
43. Every child felt more when the teacher praised their kindness.
 a valued b respected c kinder d included
44. The challenge was for everyone, the teachers and the janitors.
 a without b between c during d including
45. A stronger community is one that is and welcoming to everyone.
 a inclusive b common c local d public
46. The school was thanked for helping to keep the building clean.
 a teacher b student c shopkeeper d janitor
47. An act of can transform a difficult day into a happy one.
 a mood b conflict c kindness d misunderstanding
48. Many residents enjoy walking in the park every weekend.
 a Egyptian b shared c simple d local
49. Respected elders can be great role for the younger students.
 a acts b models c results d matches
50. Her lifted as soon as she expressed her appreciation to her friend.
 a feelings b notes c sides d moods



51. Every student had to one act of gratitude each day.
 a practice b perform c decide d create
52. The teacher will the student for their excellent sportsmanship.
 a thank b recognize c notice d praise
53. I did not how much happiness a small note could create.
 a realize b recognize c explain d tell
54. It is good to even the smallest acts of kindness.
 a praise b notice c show d recognize
55. Miss Leila is a highly teacher because she is very fair.
 a valued b included c kinder d respected
56. To solve the problem, the children began turns using the football equipment.
 a taking b helping c showing d teaching
57. Writing a thank-you note to the teacher is a simple of gratitude.
 a rule b match c act d result

SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS

Choose the Two (2) correct answers out of the Five (5) options given:

58. His outspoken views would frequently bring him into conflict with the president.
 The synonyms of the word 'conflict' are
 a clash b strife c agreement d peace e harmony
59. This is a very delicate situation and it needs to be handled sensitively.
 The synonyms of the word "handled" are
 a messed up b mishandled c opposed d directed e managed
60. The teacher asked the students not to interrupt the lesson.
 The synonym of the word "interrupt" are
 a let b interfere c allow d continue e break in
61. A family gathering was held to celebrate the wedding. The antonyms of the word "gathering" are
 a crowd b meeting c unity d division e separation
62. Good leaders know how to handle difficult negotiations. The synonyms of the word "handle" are
 a manage b treat c ignore d ruin e mess up



WRITING SKILLS

Writing a Problem-Solution Paragraph.

Choose a Realistic, Focused Problem: Who is affected ? What's happening ? Why does it matter ?

اختر مشكلة واقعية ومحددة: من المتأثر؟ ماذا يحدث؟ ولماذا هذا الأمر مهم؟

Brainstorm Possible Solutions: What can individuals or groups (school, club, neighbors) do ?

عصف ذهني لحلول ممكنة: ماذا يمكن للأفراد أو المجموعات (المدرسة، النادي، الجيران) فعله؟

Select ONE Main Problem & ONE Main Solution.

اختر مشكلة رئيسية واحدة وحلاً رئيسياً واحداً.

Part Structure: Introduce the problem, explain the solution, and show the result/outcome.

هيكل مكون من ٣ أجزاء: تقديم المشكلة، شرح الحل، وعرض النتيجة/المحصلة.

Use linking words: because, as a result, so, therefore, in order to, to solve this problem.

استخدم كلمات الربط: بسبب، كنتيجة لذلك، لذا، ولذلك، من أجل، لحل هذه المشكلة.

Revise & Polish: Use a checklist to check for clear explanations and correct linking words.

المراجعة والتحسين: استخدم قائمة تدقيق للتأكد من وضوح الشرح وصحة كلمات الربط.

Example Topic: Littering in public areas, Traffic and noise, or Food waste.

أمثلة للمواضيع: إلقاء القمامة في الأماكن العامة، المرور والضجيج، أو هدر الطعام.

How to Write a Problem-Solution Paragraph.

Step 1: Introduce the problem clearly.

الخطوة ١: تقديم المشكلة بوضوح.

Step 2: Explain one main solution in detail.

الخطوة ٢: شرح حل رئيسي واحد بالتفصيل.

Step 3: End with a positive result.

الخطوة ٣: الختام بنتيجة إيجابية.

Useful Expression: "Many people today struggle to..."

تعبير مفيد: "يعاني الكثير من الناس اليوم من..."

Useful Expression: "A good way to solve this is by..."

تعبير مفيد: "من الطرق الجيدة لحل ذلك هي عن طريق..."



Useful Expression: "As a result, people can..."

تعبير مفيد: "ونتيجة لذلك، يمكن للناس أن..."

Useful Expression: "This affects..."

تعبير مفيد: "هذا يؤثر على..."

Linking Words: because, as a result, so, therefore, in order to.

كلمات الربط: بسبب، كنتيجة لذلك، لذا، ولذلك، من أجل.

Peer Review Checklist: Are linking words used correctly ?

قائمة مراجعة الزملاء: هل تم استخدام كلمات الربط بشكل صحيح؟

Example

[Problem] Many neighborhoods face the challenge of social isolation, especially among elderly residents who live alone and may rarely interact with others – leading to loneliness, poor mental health, and reduced community connection.

[Solution] One effective way to address this is through intergenerational volunteer programs, where students or young adults regularly visit seniors to share stories, assist with small tasks (like grocery pickup or tech help), or simply enjoy a cup of tea together.

[Result] As a result, seniors feel valued and less alone. Meanwhile younger volunteers gain empathy, life wisdom, and a stronger sense of belonging – strengthening the entire community, one conversation at a time.

EXERCISES ON WRITING SKILLS

- 1 A writer should choose a problem to ensure the paragraph is clear.
 - a) complicated
 - b) realistic and focused
 - c) global
 - d) funny
- 2 We use linking words like "because" to explain
 - a) the reason for a problem
 - b) the final result
 - c) the greeting
 - d) the author's name
- 3 Before drafting, you should to find the best possible solutions.
 - a) sleep
 - b) watch a movie
 - c) brainstorm
 - d) ask for a grade
- 4 Which word would you use to explain the cause of a problem ?
 - a) because
 - b) therefore
 - c) as a result
 - d) so
- 5 Brainstorming helps you explore different ideas before
 - a) sleeping
 - b) deleting the text
 - c) selecting the best main solution
 - d) asking for a grade



- 6 When describing a problem, you must clarify
 a the weather b your age
 c a funny joke d who is affected by it
- 7 During Peer Review, a partner checks if the flow logically.
 a ink colors b linking words c handwriting styles d page numbers
- 8 To show a final consequence, a writer should use
 a therefore b because c since d for example
- 9 The outcome of your proposed solution should always be
 a negative b hidden
 c positive and realistic d a surprise
- 10 Focusing on "one main problem" ensures that the paragraph stays
 a long b confusing
 c noisy d clear and organized
- 11 A solution is "doable" if it uses
 a magic b existing resources c expensive tools d many years

SKILLS CORNER

Read the following passage, then answer the question:

"No smoking," this is what we read in closed public places and public means of transport. Scientists have found links between smoking and numerous health problems, including cancer, heart disease and lung disease. On average, smokers die 10 years sooner than non-smokers, according to the Centers for Diseases Control and Prevention.

Despite the risks, almost many adults smoke and they can't stop smoking. The main reasons for this are that nicotine is addictive and eliminating the habit is difficult. However, there is much support and help available.

If you don't smoke, don't start. This is a valuable piece of advice we often receive from the majority of doctors. Cigarette smoking and pollution represent fearful enemies to man as they damage health and eventually bring about death.

Doctors have proved that the smoker's lungs, throat and respiratory system are often attacked by cancer. Male cigarettes smokers have higher death rate from heart diseases than non-smoking males. Female smokers are less affected because they don't breathe in the smoke so deeply, so smoking is **banned** in cinemas, theatres and all closed public places. In some places, there are special rooms for smoking, just to protect non-smokers from its danger. **They** are helpless victims because they inhale poisonous gas and nicotine; they receive much more smoke than the smokers themselves. The majority of smokers who want to stop smoking prefer to ask a medical specialist's rather than using self-help approaches.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The main idea of the passage is about the of smoking.
 (a) risks (b) pros (c) causes (d) symptoms
- 2 The underlined word " they " refers to
 (a) female smokers (b) non-smokers (c) doctors (d) male smokers
- 3 Non-smoking males have death rate from heart diseases than male smokers.
 (a) higher (b) lower (c) greater (d) the same
- 4 According to the passage, there is a link between smoking and
 (a) headache (b) fever (c) diabetes (d) cancer
- 5 The underlined word "banned" is similar in meaning to
 (a) prohibited (b) profitable (c) available (d) permitted
- 6 Nicotine is an addictive chemical, so it's for smokers to stop smoking.
 (a) possible (b) hard (c) easy (d) probable
- 7 According to the passage, smoking affects the system most.
 (a) circulatory (b) digestive (c) respiratory (d) immune
- 8 Doctors advise non-smokers not to smoking.
 (a) avoid (b) start (c) stop (d) neglect

TRANSLATION

Choose the correct Arabic translation :

- 1 Health is a precious treasure that must be conserved, so a healthy diet should be followed and we should avoid junk food that causes several ageing diseases and fatal viruses.
 (a) الصحة كنز غالي لابد من المحافظة عليها ولذلك يجب إتباع نظام غذائي صحي وتجنب الطعام السريع الذي يسبب كثير من امراض الشيخوخة والفيروسات القاتلة.
 (b) الصحة كنز نادر لابد من المحافظة عليها ولذلك يجب إتباع نظام غذائي متوازن وتجنب الطعام المهدر الذي يسبب كثير من امراض الشيخوخة والفيروسات القاتلة.
 (c) الصحة تاج غالي لابد من المحافظة عليها ولذلك يجب إتباع نظام غذائي صحي وتقليل الطعام السريع الذي يسبب معظم امراض الشيخوخة والفيروسات المعدية.
 (d) الصحة كنز نفيس لابد من المحافظة عليها ولذلك يجب إتباع نظام غذائي صحي وتقليل الطعام السريع الذي يسبب كثير من امراض العصر والفيروسات المعدية.



2 The construction of new roads and flyovers has contributed greatly to facilitating the flow of traffic and reducing the number of car accidents in greater Cairo.

- a ساهم إنشاء الطرق والكبارى العلوية بشكل كبير فى تيسير تدفق حركة المرور والقضاء على حوادث السيارات فى القاهرة الكبرى.
- b لقد ساهم إنشاء الطرق والانفاق العلوية الى حد ما فى تيسير مراقبه حركة المرور وتخفيض عدد حوادث السيارات فى القاهرة الكبرى.
- c قد يساهم إنشاء الطرق والكبارى الطائره نوعاً ما فى سهوله حركة المرور والقضاء على عدد حوادث السيارات فى القاهرة الكبرى.
- d لقد ساهم إنشاء الطرق والكبارى العلوية بشكل كبير فى تيسير انسيابيه حركة المرور وتخفيض عدد حوادث السيارات فى القاهرة الكبرى.

Choose the correct English translation:

1 للسفر للخارج كثير من المزايا حيث انه يساعد الشباب على التواصل مع الثقافات الاخرى ويمكنهم من استكشاف العالم من حولهم .

- a Travelling abroad has many advantages as it helps young people to connect with other cultures and enables them to discover the world around them.
- b Travelling abroad has many advantages as it helps young people to communicate with other cultures and enables them to explore the world around them.
- c Travelling abroad has many disadvantages as it helps young people to connect with other cultures and enables them to discover the world around them.
- d Travelling a board has many disadvantages as it helps young people to communicate with another cultures and enables them to explore the world around them.

2 لقد تم تحديث معظم وسائل النقل العام فى كل أنحاء مصر. ونتيجة ذلك يوفر المسافرين الكثير من الوقت والجهد للوصول الى وجه سفرهم.

- a Most public means of transplant have been modernized all over Egypt. As a result, passengers provide much time and effort to arrive their destination.
- b Most public means of transport have been modernized all over Egypt. As a result, passengers save much time and effort to reach their destination.
- c Most public means of transplant have been modernized all over Egypt. As a result, messengers save much time and effort to reach their distinction.
- d All public means of transport have been modernized all over Egypt. As a result, messengers save much time and effort to arrive their destination.

Shaimaa Farghally



TEST ON UNIT 7

A. Vocabulary and Structures (14 Marks)

1 Choose the Two (2) correct answers out of the Five (5) options given: (2 Marks)

- 1 A good manager should know how to handle difficult customers.
The synonym of "handle" is

a avoid b manage c deal with d ignore e take on

- 2 She felt confident that she would pass the final exam.
The antonym of "confident" is

a doubtful b self-assured c insecure d certain e valued

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (12 Marks)

- 1 As a/an of this neighborhood, I have the right to vote on the local park's renovation.

a mediator b resident c janitor d senior

- 2 The company decided to a new marketing strategy to improve its falling sales.

a argue over b take on c belong to d interact with

- 3 Our school promotes by celebrating different cultures, religions, and backgrounds.

a diversity b fairness c resolution d belongings

- 4 Please do not the speaker while she is presenting the annual report.

a encourage b value c address d interrupt

- 5 The local community often holds in the town hall to discuss safety issues.

a gatherings b resolutions c abilities d conflicts

- 6 To maintain a happy workplace, the boss must treat all employees with

a diversity b fairness c isolation d misunderstanding

- 7 They would have watched the film if their TV

a worked b works c had worked d was working

- 8 that book, I wouldn't have understood the story.

a If I had read b Had it been for c If I didn't read d But for

- 9 If the mobile weren't expensive, I'd definitely buy it, but sadly it

a were b isn't c is d had been

- 10 I don't think I'll read this book one day. If I read it, I some information.

a will get b would get c get d had got



11 What is the primary goal of a problem-solution paragraph ?

- a To tell a story with a happy ending
- b To present a problem and suggest ways to fix it
- c To compare two different products
- d To list the advantages of a new technology

12 "To solve this problem, people can participate in local clean-up days." This sentence is a

- a problem
- b solution
- c result
- d background

B. Reading (7 Marks)

3 Read the following passage, then answer the question:

You don't need to look back thirty years to realize tremendous developments in science and technology and how these advances are changing the lifestyle of millions of people all over the world. Although the TV and the radio were there in those days, no one had heard then of those wonderful remote control units that turn the devices on and off helping us choose our means of entertainment with the least physical effort.

There are many other benefits of technology that have made our life more comfortable. You no longer worry about washing the dishes; your dishwashing machine can take care of that. If you want a hot meal, you just put your favourite food into the microwave oven and it is ready in minutes. If you need to send an urgent message, just write it down and send it through your fax machine. Passenger planes fly non-stop to different parts of the world and their pilots can find time to relax as the computers do most of the hard work for them. This all leaves people more time to enjoy themselves and it also shows the remarkable current progress in the leisure industry.

Leisure today is a big business. Just read the advertisements in your newspaper. You just won't believe the variety; you will find something to fit all incomes and tastes. Today, robots take over the work of people in industry and communications across the world have become faster. Technology continues to create ways to persuade us to work less and enjoy ourselves more, so the leisure industry will play a far more important role in our lives.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The passage is mainly about the of modern technology.

- a cons
- b demerits
- c pros
- d disadvantages

2 Thanks to modern technology, our life has become more

- a comfortable
- b exhausting
- c complicated
- d complex

3 The antonym of the underlined word "tremendous" is

- a significant
- b massive
- c gigantic
- d minor

4 When robots take over the work of people in industry, this will job opportunities.

- a provide
- b reduce
- c support
- d increase



- 5 The underlined word "persuade" in the third paragraph means
- a prevent b discourage c force d convince
- 6 According to the passage, leisure today is before.
- a more expensive than b as expensive as
c more available than d less available than
- 7 A microwave can cook our food
- a rapidly b slowly c traditionally d gradually
- 8 According to the passage, there were no 30 years ago.
- a lamps b televisions c remote controls d radios

C. Translation (4 Marks)

4 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation: (2 marks)

- 1 We owe much to the country where we live. Its land is dear to us as our eyes. It protects us from our enemies and helps us to lead a better life.

- a نحن مدينون بالكثير للبلد الذي نعيش فيه فأرضه عزيزة علينا كأعيننا فهو يحمينا من أعدائنا و يساعدنا أن نقود حياة أفضل.
- b نحن نملك الكثير في البلد الذي نعيش فيه فأرضه عزيزة علينا كأعيننا فهو يحمينا من أعدائنا و يساعدنا أن نحيا حياة أفضل.
- c نحن مدينون بالكثير للبلد الذي نعيش فيه فأرضه عزيزة علينا كأعيننا فهو يحمينا من أعدائنا و يساعدنا أن نحيا حياة أفضل.
- d نحن مدينون بالكثير للقرية التي نعيش فيها فأرضها عزيزة علينا كأعيننا فهي تحمينا من أعدائنا و تساعدنا أن نحيا حياة أفضل.

4 B) Choose the correct English translation: (2 marks)

- 1 يجب أن نشجع أبناءنا علي القراءة في سن مبكرة حتي يمكن تكوين شخصيتهم بشكل جيد.

- a We should encourage our children to read at an early age until can form their personalities in a good way.
- b We should encourage our children to read at an early age to be able to form there personalities well.
- c We should encourage our children to read at an early age to be able to form their personalities good.
- d We should encourage our children to read at an early age to be able to form their personalities well.



Challenging the Status Quo

100

- ## What is the role of the expert witness in the courtroom ?

E. Writing

phrases to give the same meaning: (1 mark)

- used the accident. (If)

Answers on the following topic : (3 marks)

Da7ee-7Englizzy

في
اللة الانجليزية

Unit 8

Creating a Better Community



Mrs.

Shaimaa Farghally

انجليزي بقعد في الدماغ



Part One: Lessons 1 & 2

KEY VOCABULARY

access (v.) (n.)	يصل إلى / حق الوصول	innovation (n.)	ابتكار
change-maker (n.)	صانع تغيير	passion (n.)	شغف
determination (n.)	عزيمة / إصرار	persistence (n.)	إصرار / استمرار
determine (v.)	يحدد / يقرر	persisting (adj.)	مستمر / ملح
determined (adj.)	مصمم / عازم	teamwork (n.)	عمل جماعي
give access to (phr.)	يتيح الوصول إلى	innovate (v.)	يبتكر
initiative (n.)	مبادرة	passionate (about) (adj.)	شغوف بـ
light a spark of hope (phr.)		يوقد شعلة أمل	

DEFINITIONS:

change-maker	صانع التغيير	a person who creates positive change
determination	عزيمة	strong will to do something
give access to	يوفر إمكانية الوصول إلى	to allow someone to enter, use, or get information from something
innovation	ابتكار	creating new ideas or solutions
light a spark of hope	يشعل بارقة أمل	to create a small, new feeling of hope, especially in a difficult situation
passion	شغف	a very strong feeling of love, hatred, anger, enthusiasm, etc
persistence	مثابرة / إصرار	the ability to continue despite difficulties
teamwork	العمل الجماعي	working together toward one goal

EXTRA VOCABULARY

achieve	يحقق	awareness	وعي	background	خلفية
brave	شجاع	brighter	أكثر إشراقاً	community	مجتمع
contribute	يساهم	courage	شجاعة	engineer	مهندس
entrepreneur	رائد أعمال	environment	بيئة	extraordinary	استثنائي



fairer	أكثر عدلاً	farmer	مزارع / فلاح	found	يؤسس
funding	تمويل	goal	هدف	green	أخضر (صديق للبيئة)
healthier	أكثر صحة	household	أسرة / منزل	individual	فرد
inspiring	ملهم	invent	يخترع	lack	نقص
land	أرض	limited	محدود	low-cost	منخفض التكلفة
creativity	إبداع	dangerous	خطير	deed	فعل / عمل
differ	يختلف	difficulty	صعوبة	digital	رقمي
meaningful	ذو مغزى	movement	حركة	nationality	جنسية
ordinary	عادي	organize	ينظم	planting	زراعة
positive	إيجابي	protect	يحمي	recycling	إعادة تدوير
responsibility	مسؤولية	safely	بأمان	skill	مهارة
solution	حل	system	نظام	transform	يحول
unused	غير مستخدم	vision	رؤية	wildlife	حياة برية
electronic waste	نفايات إلكترونية	endangered	مهدد بالانقراض		

water-filtering

تنقية المياه

SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS

Word

positive

إيجابي

protect

يحمي

endangered

مهدد بالانقراض

determination

الإصرار

persistence

المثابرة

Synonyms

favorable - appreciative
- supportivedefend - safeguard - shield
guardthreatened - risked -
imperileddecision - decisiveness
resolve - persistencecontinuity - continuance
endurance - survival

Antonyms

negative - unfavorable

attack - assault

protected - guarded -
preservedhesitation - indecision
uncertainty - doubtcessation - termination
- end - expiration

**passion**

الشغف

enthusiasm - intensity -
mania - emotioninsensibility -
indifference**meaningful**

ذو معني

important - significant
- major

trivial - insignificant - minor

deed

فعل / صنع

action - act

insensibility -
indifference**EXPRESSIONS, COLLOCATIONS AND PREPOSITIONS**

begin with

يبدأ بـ

neighborhood clean-up

حملة تنظيف الحي

believe in

يؤمن بـ

pile up

يتراكم

hand in hand

جنباً إلى جنب

regardless of

بغض النظر عن

lack of

نقص في

turn into

يتحول إلى

COLLOCATIONS

bring about solutions

يوجد حلولاً

light a spark of hope

يشعل بارقة أمل

give access to

يوفر إمكانية الوصول إلى

take action

يتخذ إجراءً

launch a project

يطلق مشروعاً

take positive action

يتخذ إجراءً إيجابياً

LANGUAGE NOTES**launch**

يطلق

a spaceship

a ship

a boat

a satellite

a rocket

a campaign

Everyone / everybody / someone / somebody / no one / nobody / person

لاحظ استخدام فعل مفرد مع الكلمات الآتية ولكن عند الإشارة إليها بضمير نستخدم ضمير جمع:

EX

Everyone benefits from space technology in their everyday lives.

EX

Everyone has their own ideas about the best way to bring up children.



لاحظ استخدام **everyday** ككلمة واحدة بمعنى يومي وهي في هذه الحالة صفة **adj**.
وعند استخدام **every day** (كلمتان منفصلتان) بمعنى كل يوم وهي في هذه الحالة حال **adv**.

EX The problems of everyday life الحياة اليومية

EX He watches TV. every day.

Help + inf. / to+inf.

Help with + n.

EX He helped me do (to do) the job.

EX She helped me with my homework

Let + مصدر + مفعول

allow + مصدر + مفعول + to

allow + v+ing

EX My father let me go to the cinema .

EX My father allowed me to go to the cinema .

EX He doesn't allow staying up late.

EX He wasn't allowed to smoke. مبنى للمجهول

READING

Change-Maker Stories

Around the world, ordinary people are turning into extraordinary **change-maker** individuals who take positive action to make their communities better places to live in. A change-maker might begin with a simple idea, such as organizing a neighborhood clean-up, planting trees, or collecting plastic bottles for recycling. Others launch projects that teach children digital skills, support small farmers, or protect endangered wildlife.

True change-makers do not wait for someone else to solve problems; instead, they use creativity, teamwork, and **determination** to bring about real solutions. Even when they face difficulties like a lack of money, time, or support, they continue because they believe in the **power** of **persistence**. They understand that every major movement begins with a single step taken by a brave individual.

In one Egyptian village, for example, students transformed a piece of unused land into a green community garden where families now grow vegetables together. In another city, a young engineer invented a low-cost water-filtering system to **give** poor households **access to** clean drinking water. These inspiring efforts prove that age, background, or nationality show that while backgrounds may differ, **passion** and action allow individuals to achieve meaningful goals regardless of their starting point.

Change-makers remind us that hope grows through action. Every small deed, when done with care and courage, contributes to building a fairer, healthier, and brighter world for everyone.





LISTENING

An Egyptian Change-Maker

Mustafa Hemdan is a young Egyptian engineer who decided to turn a serious problem into a creative solution. As a university student, he noticed the growing mountains of electronic waste – old computers, phones, and cables piling up in Egypt. These devices contain dangerous materials that harm both people and the environment if not recycled properly. Instead of ignoring the problem, Mustafa took action with a small group of friends. He founded RecycloBekia, one of the first companies in the Middle East to collect and recycle electronic waste safely. Their goal was simple: protect the environment, create jobs, and change how people think about waste. At first, the team faced many challenges; few people believed that young Egyptians could build a serious recycling business, funding was limited, and awareness was low. However, through **persistence** and **teamwork**, Mustafa proved that **innovation** and responsibility can go hand in hand. Today, RecycloBekia has safely recycled thousands of tons of e-waste and has inspired other young entrepreneurs. Mustafa believes that every big change begins with a small step. His story shows that determination, vision, and teamwork can truly **light a spark of hope** for a cleaner and greener Egypt.

KEY VOCABULARY EXERCISES

- 1 You need a secret password or a fingerprint to your private files online.
 (a) innovate (b) access (c) determine (d) explore
- 2 The invention of the mobile phone was a great that changed how the world communicates.
 (a) perseverance (b) information (c) purpose (d) innovation
- 3 Mustafa is an Egyptian who turned a serious waste problem into a creative solution.
 (a) lawbreaker (b) peacemaker (c) troublemaker (d) change-maker
- 4 A simple act of kindness from a stranger can in the heart of someone who is sad.
 (a) light a spark of hope (b) turn into
 (c) walk side by side (d) express ideas clearly
- 5 It took a lot of for the athlete to finish the race even though he was very tired.
 (a) strength (b) curiosity (c) determination (d) wealth
- 6 His deep for history is the reason why he spends all his free time visiting ancient museums.
 (a) effort (b) passion (c) imagination (d) knowledge
- 7 Scientists carry out many tests to the exact age of the ancient bones found in the desert.
 (a) access (b) innovate (c) achieve (d) determine



- 8 She is very about protecting the environment and works hard to save endangered wildlife.
 (a) passionate (b) determined (c) skilled (d) brilliant
- 9 The explorer refused to give up even when the weather became very cold and dangerous.
 (a) ordinary (b) narrow (c) unused (d) determined
- 10 Through great and practicing every single day, the girl finally learned how to play the violin.
 (a) awareness (b) persistence (c) leadership (d) recognition
- 11 The new mountain road will access to modern healthcare for the people living in the remote village.
 (a) light (b) bring (c) take (d) give
- 12 The noise from the construction site made it very difficult for the students to study.
 (a) persisting (b) extraordinary (c) heavy (d) expensive
- 13 Taking the to start a small business requires a lot of courage and careful planning.
 (a) meaning (b) background (c) initiative (d) goal
- 14 Success in a big project usually requires good among all the members of the group.
 (a) passion (b) teamwork (c) innovation (d) success
- 15 Successful companies must always to create new products that help make life easier.
 (a) solve (b) reach (c) protect (d) innovate

DEFINITIONS

- 16 The ability to continue despite difficulties is
 (a) assistance (b) persistence (c) resistance (d) distance
- 17 Creating new ideas or solutions is called
 (a) education (b) population (c) communication (d) innovation
- 18 A person who creates positive change in society is a
 (a) matchmaker (b) watchmaker (c) change-maker (d) bookmaker
- 19 To is to create a small, new feeling of hope, especially in a difficult situation.
 (a) light a spark of hope (b) build a bridge of rope
 (c) climb a slope of hope (d) wash a coat of soap



- 20 Having a strong will to do something regardless of the challenges is
- a organization b information c determination d situation
- 21 A very strong feeling of love, hatred, anger, or enthusiasm is
- a fashion b passion c action d cushion
- 22 To means to allow someone to enter, use, or get information from something.
- a give a message to b give a blessing to c give a lesson to d give access to
- 23 Working together toward one goal with a group of people is
- a teamwork b woodwork c paperwork d housework

EXTRA VOCABULARY

- 24 The young girl showed talent in painting at a very young age, surprising her teachers.
- a ordinary b limited c narrow d extraordinary
- 25 Every has the power to take a single step that begins a major movement for change.
- a furniture b background c individual d nationality
- 26 We should all try to take action to make our neighborhoods better places to live in.
- a positive b liquid c stone d metal
- 27 Students transformed a piece of unused land into a green garden where families grow vegetables.
- a movement b shadow c community d candle
- 28 The students are a neighborhood clean-up to remove all the trash from the local park.
- a planting b organizing c recycling d funding
- 29 plastic bottles is a great way to reduce the amount of trash that goes into the ocean.
- a Recycling b Climbing c Sleeping d Jumping
- 30 Children today need to learn skills to succeed in a world full of computers.
- a physical b traditional c expensive d digital
- 31 Learning new like coding can help young people find very good jobs when they grow up.
- a oceans b skills c deserts d clouds



32. Many people are working hard to save wildlife from disappearing from our planet forever.
- a brave b serious c endangered d amazing
33. Many like the mountain gorilla and the giant panda are in danger of dying out.
- a spirits b wildlife c gestures d results
34. Mustafa used his to find a new way to collect and recycle electronic waste safely.
- a awareness b difficulty c responsibility d creativity
35. The young engineer worked very hard until he finally found a creative to the water problem.
- a solution b mountain c valley d river
36. A of clean drinking water is a major problem for many people living in poor areas.
- a dream b spark c goal d lack
37. The students the empty piece of land into a beautiful garden for everyone to enjoy.
- a invented b transformed c founded d contributed
38. There is a lot of land in the city that could be used to build new parks.
- a meaningful b fairer c healthier d unused
39. The team developed a system so that even poor families could afford to buy it.
- a low-cost b digital c endangered d inspiring
40. We need a system to make the water from the river safe for people to drink.
- a traditional b extraordinary c water-filtering d electronic
41. Every in the village now has access to clean water thanks to the new project.
- a behavior b meaning c decoration d household
42. Reading stories about people who help others can be very for young students.
- a inspiring b unused c dangerous d limited
43. People from every can work together to solve big problems like global warming.
- a spirit b attention c friendship d background
44. People's opinions may but they can still work together toward one common goal.
- a heal b spread c echo d differ
45. Helping other people is a way to spend your time and make a difference.
- a serious b modern c meaningful d brave
46. Every small of kindness helps to make the world a much better place.
- a bridge b seed c wave d deed



47. It took a lot of for the girl to speak in front of the whole school.
 (a) history (b) courage (c) humor (d) wisdom
48. We should all try to to the project by giving our time and energy.
 (a) contribute (b) express (c) promote (d) admire
49. Everyone wants to live in a world where all people are treated with respect.
 (a) extraordinary (b) brighter (c) healthier (d) fairer
50. We must find a safe way to recycle like old phones and computers.
 (a) creativity (b) teamwork (c) responsibility (d) electronic waste
51. He a small company to help collect and recycle plastic waste in his city.
 (a) differ (b) founded (c) achieve (d) contribute
52. The project was stopped because they did not have enough to buy the tools.
 (a) awareness (b) innovation (c) funding (d) responsibility
53. The number of people who can attend the workshop is to only twenty.
 (a) limited (b) extraordinary (c) brave (d) low-cost
54. We need to raise about the importance of recycling to save our planet.
 (a) awareness (b) spirit (c) attention (d) silence

PREPOSITIONS AND PHRASES

55. The students worked hard to the empty land into a beautiful green garden.
 (a) look (b) turn (c) fall (d) run
56. Anyone can achieve meaningful goals of their starting point or background.
 (a) instead (b) because (c) inclusive (d) regardless
57. Change-makers often continue their work even when they face a of money or time.
 (a) pack (b) back (c) lack (d) sack
58. The young engineer noticed mountains of electronic waste up in many cities.
 (a) filling (b) killing (c) selling (d) piling
59. Instead of ignoring the problems in our society, we should action to help others.
 (a) take (b) lake (c) cake (d) shake
60. Small deeds of kindness can a spark of hope for people in difficult situations.
 (a) fight (b) night (c) tight (d) light

SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS

61. Her persistence and enthusiasm have helped the group to achieve its international success.. The synonym of the word "persistence" is
 (a) preservation (b) endurance (c) hesitation (d) doubt (e) uncertainty



62

Having the opportunity to work would make retirement more meaningful for many senior citizens.. The antonym of the word “meaningful” is

- a useful b important c serious d unimportant e insignificant

63

The giant panda is an endangered species.. The synonym of the word “endangered” is

- a secure b safe c protected d unsafe e exposed to danger

64

At school, his early interest in music developed into an abiding passion. The synonym of the word “passion” is

- a hatred b love c despise d enthusiasm e hostility

65

Surely the function of the law is to protect everyone's rights.. The synonym of the word “protect” is

- a assault b keep c defend d attack e overturn



GRAMMAR

Modal verbs of necessity, lack of necessity and prohibition الأفعال الناقصة للضرورة وعدم الضرورة والتحريم

Present

must
have to/has to
need to/needs to

Past

had to

Future

must/have to/has to
will have to/ need to /
needs to / will need to

الضرورة و الإلزام في الحاضر



EX 1 Drivers (must – has to) have a driving licence while driving.

EX 2 I (must- have to) buy a present for my Mum.

EX 3 You (must- have to) come and have dinner with us.

EX 4 I (must- have to) this new skill for my own growth. I need to develop myself.

(must) تركيبات تساوي

عند عمل ضرورة في الحاضر

المصدر + to (مفعول به + for) It is necessary

...المصدر + It is a must to

المصدر + It is a necessity to

EX 5 To enter the museum, it is (a must – must) to buy a ticket first.

EX 6 To enter the museum, it is (necessary – must) to buy a ticket first.

EX 7 Was it (necessity – a must) to attend the meeting in person?.



تأتي **must** في صيغة الاستفهام للتعبير عن الضيق أو النقد.

EX 8 (Must you- Do you must) make so much noise? It's really annoying ?

have to/has to تستخدم

للتعبير عن الزام خارجي مثل القواعد والقوانين واللوائح المفروضة علينا أو بمعنى آخر عندما لا يكون لدينا خيار بين أن تفعل أو لا تفعل.

EX 9 He (has to- must pay) the rent **الإيجار** before the end of the month.

need to/ needs to

لاحظ اننا يمكن ان نستخدم (need to) للتعبير عن انه من الضروري ان تفعل شيئاً.

EX 10 He (needs to- have to) finish his work before the deadline.

Do Does + فاعل + have to/ need to + مصدر ..?

صيغة السؤال

Have has + فاعل + got to + مصدر ?

EX 11 Does he (have to- has to) get up early?

لاحظ الفرق بين (must & have to)

must

inner obligation **الزام داخلي**

I must wear this tie as it suits my clothes.

هذا الزام داخلي وهو أن المتحدث يؤكد على نفسه ارتداء هذه الكرافته لانها تناسب ملابسه فقط (اراي شخصي بضرورة فعل شئ)

General rule/law (نص قانون عام)

Drivers must have a driving licence while driving.

هذا نص القانون لكل فئات السائقين وليس شخص محدد (نص القانون كما هو موجود في كتب القانون أو اللوائح)

have to

External Obligation **الزام خارجي**

I have to wear this tie at my work.

هذا الزام خارجي وهو أن المتحدث لا خيار لديه فيجب عليه ارتداء الكرافته في عمله (قاعدة يجب الالتزام بها)

ما يلزمنا به القانون وليس نص القانون

You have to carry a driving licence while driving.

هذا الكلام موجه لشخص محدد وليس كل الناس. (إعطاء أمر طبقاً لقانون وليس نص القانون الأصلي)



The speaker thinks it is necessary.

المتحدث يعتقد أن هذا الشيء ضروري
(شخص يعطي أوامر)

Teacher:

You must complete the essay by Sunday.

Another person thinks it is necessary.

شخص آخر هو الذي يعتقد أن هذا الشيء ضروري
(الشخص المأمور)

Student:

We have to complete the essay by Sunday



نستخدم التركيب **be to** بمعنى يجب للتعبير عن الضرورة

EX 12 He (is to- have to) attend the meeting tomorrow.

was
were + to + inf

had to + inf

it was necessary +to+inf

الضرورة
في الماضي

needed to + inf

EX 13 He (has to – had to) cancel the trip because he had an accident.

It isn't necessary for شخص +to+inf.

don't/doesn't have to + inf.

needn't + inf

don't/doesn't need to + inf.

lack of
necessity.

نقص الضرورة

تستخدم هذه التركيبات للتعبير عن شيء ليس من الضروري فعله في المضارع

EX 14 She (doesn't have to- has to) get up early on Fridays.

EX 15 He has a car so he (don't have to – needn't) take a bus.

EX 16 She feels much better now. You don't have to / don't need to/ needn't call a doctor.

كلهم صح

Shaimaa Farghally



الضرورة و الإلزام في الماضي

تستخدم هذه التركيبات للتعبير عن شيء لم يكن من الضروري فعله في الماضي ولذلك لم يتم

الضرورة و الإلزام
في الماضي

didn't have to + inf.

didn't need to + inf.

It wasn't necessary to + inf.

EX 17 He (needn't have paid – didn't have to pay) for the course because he won a scholarship **منحة دراسية**, so he focused on his studies without financial stress.

معلومة خطيرة

تستخدم هذه التركيبة للتعبير عن شيء لم يكن من الضروري فعله في الماضي ولكنه قد تم.

needn't have + P.P

EX 18 You (needn't have bought - didn't have to buy) all that food ; we already had plenty at home.

التحريم Prohibition

mustn't + inf.

تستخدم (mustn't + inf) للتعبير عن شيء محظور أو ممنوع القيام به طبقا للقوانين واللوائح

EX 19 You (mustn't- needn't) exceed the speed limit while driving on this road.

توجد بعض التركيبات التي تعبر عن التحريم مثل

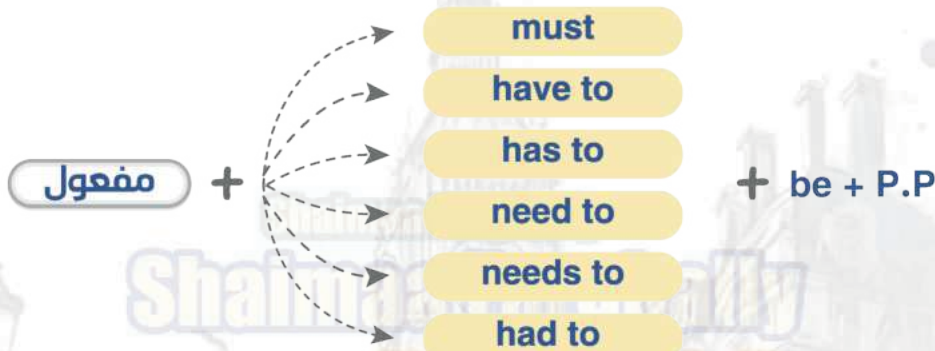


EX 20 It is (forbidden- mustn't) to smoke in public places.



EX 21 You are not (allowed- banned) to exceed the speed limit.

صيغة المبني للمجهول



EX 22 The law (must- must be) obeyed to ensure a safe and peaceful society.

لإعطاء النصيحة

<i>Should+inf</i>	<i>Shouldn't+inf</i>
You ought to + inf	You ought not to + inf.
It's better to + inf	It's better not to + inf.
It's desirable to + inf	It's undesirable to + inf.
It's advisable to + inf.	It's inadvisable to + inf.
I advise you to + inf.	I advise you not to + inf.
My advice to you is to + inf	My advice to you is not to + inf.
You ('d) had better + inf.	You had better not + inf.
It will be a good idea to + inf.	It will be a good idea not to + inf.
The best thing to do is to + inf.	The best thing to do is not to + inf.
If I were you, I'd + inf.	If I were you, I wouldn't + inf.

EX 23 You (should to - ought to - 'd better to) drink plenty of water during hot weather.

EX 24 It's (advisable - advise - advice) to drink plenty of water during hot weather.



التعبير عن اللوم والندم على فعل أو عدم فعل شيئاً في الماضي

نستخدم **should have + p.p** في لوم شخص على عدم فعل شيء كان المفروض يعملها

EX 25 You (should have called- should call) me earlier to discuss the problem but you didn't. (لوم blame)

نستخدم **shouldn't have + p.p** في لوم شخص على فعل شيء المفروض مكنش عمله

EX 26 I (shouldn't have bought- should have bought) so many snacks because we already had enough at home. (ندم regret)

EXERCISE ON GRAMMAR

- 1 Nada has got a message from her family. She reply soon or they 'll start to worry.
 a) mustn't b) doesn't have to c) needs to d) had to
- 2 You use your phone while you're driving. It's dangerous.
 a) must b) can c) mustn't d) should
- 3 You to smoke while you are using any kind of public transport.
 a) allowed b) didn't allow c) aren't allowed d) hadn't allowed
- 4 You should vegetables before you cook them.
 a) wash b) be washed c) to wash d) washing
- 5 I've already watered the plants; you to do it again.
 a) needn't b) shouldn't c) don't need d) mustn't
- 6 I wear a suit to work. It's the dress code in my company.
 a) must b) should c) have to d) mustn't
- 7 Yesterday, I to stand on the bus as it was full.
 a) had b) have c) must d) needn't
- 8 What you do if you have a problem?
 a) have to b) need c) must d) ought
- 9 You come and try mum's food. I'm sure you will like it.
 a) should b) must c) have to d) ought to
- 10 Do you tell your parents about your fault?
 a) have to b) need c) should d) must
- 11 Our boss is so serious, so we all be in the office at 7.30
 a) must b) have to c) should d) can



- 12 It's a to get a doctor at once.
 a necessary b must c should d advice
- 13 I can give you a lift to the airport. You to take a taxi.
 a needn't b don't need c must d have
- 14 You turn this music down before your dad gets angry.
 a need b ought c had better d must to
- 15 You buy a pen. I'll lend you one.
 a have b needn't c don't have to d b & c
- 16 Sayed his friend yesterday. Now, it is too late.
 a should call b shouldn't have called
 c should have called d shouldn't call
- 17 Drivers stop their cars when the traffic lights are red.
 a mustn't b must c shouldn't d needn't
- 18 Drivers exceed the speed limit while driving.
 a should b shouldn't c must d mustn't
- 19 When you go to Egypt, you visit the Pyramids. They are fantastic!
 a needn't b must c have d need to
- 20 He at the little girl. She was so scared.
 a should shout b should have shouted
 c shouldn't have shouted d ought to have shouted
- 21 You park your car here. It's forbidden.
 a mustn't b must c might d should
- 22 It is illegal to break the law; we all obey it.
 a mustn't b oughtn't c must d ought
- 24 At my sports club, everyone wear flat shoes. It is an important rule.
 a have to b must to c has to d need to
- 24 You take photographs here; it is a military area.
 a mustn't b shouldn't c must d should
- 25 You attend the next meeting. I only advise you.
 a have to b should c must d can
- 26 You attend my sister's wedding ceremony. I'll be so happy if you come.
 a may b can c should d must
- 27 It is advisable not to throw this tool away. You keep it.
 a mustn't b might c shouldn't d must



28. You to eat a lot of sweets; this isn't healthy.
 a shouldn't b ought not c mustn't d needn't
29. I advise my brother not to eat a lot of carbohydrates. This means he eat a lot of carbohydrates.
 a would rather b should c ought not d had better not
30. When driving, we must stop at the red light. It's a/an
 a advice b invitation c law d suggestion
31. They eat that bread. It's green and has a bad smell.
 a should b aren't c must d mustn't
32. Cheating in exams is strictly forbidden. This means you cheat in exams.
 a shouldn't b mustn't c must d should
33. You do the shopping now. I'll do it later.
 a mustn't b needn't c must d have to
34. There is a "No Smoking" sign. We smoke here.
 a shouldn't b should c mustn't d must
35. You forget to use a tissue when you sneeze.
 a mustn't b aren't c didn't d haven't
36. Emam Ashour hurt his shoulder during the match and go to hospital for treatment.
 a should b needs to c had to d has to
37. We learn computer skills at school because they are very useful.
 a mustn't b should c can't d don't
38. Your essay has some mistakes. It again.
 a should revise b should have revised
 c shouldn't be revised d should be revised
39. The car You are starting to lose control.
 a must be stopped b should not stop
 c must to stop d should have stopped
40. We run to the museum because it was already closed when we got there.
 a needn't have b didn't have to c don't have to d don't need to
41. He get up early because it was a holiday yesterday, so he slept till late.
 a needn't have b didn't have to c mustn't d shouldn't
42. you play music loudly? I have to concentrate on my study.
 a Can b Could c Ought to d Must



43. drive a car without holding a driving licence: it's against the law.
 a Never b Do c Doesn't d Won't
44. I think you sleep early and get up early to be healthy. I only advise you.
 a ought b can't c might d had better
45. When driving, you must always stop at the red light. It is a/an
 a law b invitation c advice d suggestion
46. Adel cut his leg and go to hospital for treatment.
 a should b needs to c had to d has to
47. She do this work today, because she can do it tomorrow.
 a mustn't b doesn't have to c needn't d b & c
48. You must try some of this cake. This's a/an
 a warm invitation b law c deduction d strong reminder
49. A: I've got a cold. B: Then you'd stay in bed.
 a have to b need to c should d better
50. Why must school rules ?
 a follow b followed c be followed d be following
51. You to the factory yesterday as it was an official holiday.
 a needn't go b had to
 c needn't have gone d mustn't go
52. This building is cracked. It or someone may be killed.
 a must evacuate b must be evacuated
 c should be evacuated d should evacuate
53. It's banned to use your camera here. That means you
 a can use your camera here b couldn't use your camera here
 c mustn't use your camera here d are allowed to use your camera
54. I advise my brother not to stay up late. This means he stay up late.
 a would rather b should c ought not d had better not
55. I don't know what to solve this problem; I need your urgent advice.
 a should I do b did I have to do c I should do d I needn't do
56. "I needn't have bought sweets". This means that the speaker sweets.
 a bought b didn't buy
 c had to buy d should have bought
57. We enough time, so we needn't hurry, so let's walk.
 a don't have b no longer have c still have d have no



58 You promote your career skills; it is highly recommended.

- a) shouldn't b) had to c) would prefer d) ought to

59 They all be careful to avoid danger on the working site last time.

- a) have to b) had to c) needed d) should

60 It necessary to check out before 12 p.m., so I had to leave on time.

- a) is b) will be c) was d) wasn't

61 Which of the following DOESN'T show prohibition?

- a) You mustn't lean against the door of the metro.
b) You aren't allowed to take photographs here.
c) You needn't buy more bread today.
d) You aren't permitted to drive your car without wearing a seat belt.

62 Which of the following doesn't show lack of necessity?

- a) You needn't hurry; you aren't late.
b) It isn't important to rewrite your composition.
c) We don't have to sleep early; tomorrow is a holiday.
d) She had to tell the police about that accident.

63 Which of the following doesn't show advice?

- a) It's advisable to wear cotton clothes in the winter.
b) You should follow these tips to avoid making mistakes.
c) It's very necessary to follow the coach's instructions.
d) You ought to be more careful when crossing the street.

64 Which of the following doesn't show necessity?

- a) It's necessary to hurry to catch the train.
b) You should work hard to achieve more progress.
c) The teacher orders us to follow school rules.
d) It's a must to take the medicine on time.

OPERATE YOUR MIND

تقفل عقلك



65 After the storm, the ground was covered in a thick blanket of snow. The word "blanket" means

- a) Sheet b) layer c) lawyer d) quilt

66 Why must you question every decision I make? This is a

- a) prohibition b) necessity c) criticism d) suggestion

67 You needn't worry about the test; you've prepared well. Needn't here expresses

- a) necessity b) impossibility c) prohibition d) lack of necessity



68. They keep the news a secret, but it spread quickly.
 a are to b were to c didn't have to d have to
69. Must you wear this heavy Pullover in Summer? This shows
 a disapproval b approval c suggestion d permission
70. It will be to go to the market tomorrow. We have all food stuffs.
 a necessary b unnecessary c must d necessity
71. You hardly hurry; there's plenty of time.
 a need b needn't c need to d don't need
72. This room needs before the guests arrive.
 a cleaning b to clean c to cleaning d be cleaned
73. He for the extra food; it was wasteful since most of it went uneaten.
 a didn't have to pay b needn't to pay
 c needn't pay d needn't have paid

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets to give the same meaning:

1. It is necessary for you to arrive on time for the meeting. (must)
2. It's against the law to park your car here. (mustn't)
3. I am obliged to wear a uniform at my school. (have to)
4. I regret not studying harder for the final exam. (should)
5. It was necessary for him to take a taxi to the airport yesterday. (had to)
6. You are forbidden from smoking in the hospital. (mustn't)
7. Is it necessary for us to bring our own laptops? (Do)
8. He was wrong not to invite his cousins to the party. (should)
9. It isn't necessary for you to wash the car; I've already done it. (don't)
10. The rules say that students are required to stay on campus. (have to)
11. It is compulsory for all passengers to wear seatbelts. (have to)



- 12 I'm sure it was a mistake for him to buy that expensive car. (shouldn't)
- 13 Was there an obligation for him to apologize for his behavior? (Did)
- 14 You were lucky not to get hurt, but you were very careless. (should)
- 15 There was no other choice for us but to cancel the trip. (had to)
- 16 It's not necessary to pay for the tickets in advance. (needn't)
- 17 I stayed up late last night and now I am very tired. (shouldn't)
- 18 I am sorry I didn't see your message earlier. (should)
- 19 It was your duty to finish the report by Friday, but you didn't. (should)
- 20 The boss made the employees stay late to finish the project. (had to)
- 21 There was no necessity for you to cook all this food! (shouldn't)



Part Two : Lessons 3 & 4

KEY VOCABULARY

Farghally

enthusiasm (n.)	الحماس	perseverance (n.)	مثابرة
enthusiastic (adj.)	متحمس	persevere (v.)	يثابر
obstacle (n.)	عقبة / عائق	separate (v.) (adj.)	يفصل / منفصل

DEFINITIONS:

enthusiasm	الحماس	eagerness and lively interest or enjoyment in doing something .
obstacle	عقبة / عائق	something that hinders or prevents progress or doing something .
perseverance	مثابرة	people who help both sides solve a disagreement.
separate	يفصل / منفصل	when people don't understand each other correctly.

EXTRA VOCABULARY

ability	قدرة	accessibility	سهولة الوصول	achiever	منجز / ناجح
action	فعل / إجراء	application	تطبيق	balance	يوازن
brilliant	رائع / عبقرى	celebrate	يحتفل	clearly	بوضوح
coding	برمجة	combine	يجمع بين	command	أمر
continue	يستمر	cooperation	تعاون	curiosity	فضول
developer	مطور	disability	إعاقة	purpose	غرض / هدف
recognition	تقدير / اعتراف	responsibility	مسؤولية	shaping	تشكيل
skilled	ماهر	software	برمجيات	strength	قوة
discover	يكشف	environmental	بيئي	essential	ضروري
expensive	غالي الثمن	failure	فشل	fear	خوف
healthcare	رعاية صحية	imagination	خيال	inspire	يلهم
literacy	محو الأمية	mentorship	توجيه / إرشاد	mistake	خطأ
mountain	جبل	perfectly	بشكل مثالي	permission	إذن
practical	عملي	programming	برمجة	success	نجاح



successful	ناجح	tool	أداة	trust	ثقة
communication	تواصل	misunderstand	يُسيء فهم		
underestimate	يستهيئ بـ	workshop	ورشة عمل		

SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS

Word

Synonyms

Antonyms

enthusiasm

حماس

eagerness - excitement

boredom - apathy

ملل - فتور

obstacle

عقبة

barrier - hurdle

aid - advantage

مساعدة - ميزة

perseverance

مثابرة

persistence - dedication

laziness - surrender

كسل - استسلام

separate

يفصل

disconnect - divide

unite - merge

يوحد - يدمج

practical

عملي

businesslike - constructive

theoretical - speculative

نظري - تخيلي

EXPRESSIONS, COLLOCATIONS AND PREPOSITIONS

belong to

ينتمي إلى

wait for

ينتظر

key to success

مفتاح النجاح

walk side by side

يسير جنباً إلى جنب

passionate about

شغوف بـ

move forward

يتقدم للأمام

COLLOCATIONS

access education

يحصل على التعليم

express ideas clearly

يعبر عن الأفكار بوضوح

balance studies and dream

يوازن بين الدراسة والحلم

share responsibilities

يشارك المسؤوليات

creative thinking

تفكير إبداعي

stay strong

يبقى قوياً

develop skills

يطور المهارات

turn vision into action

يحول الرؤية لواقع

lack access to

ينقصه الوصول لـ

shape the future

يشكل المستقبل



LANGUAGE NOTES

Social & Sociable**Social**

اجتماعي (يتعلق بالمجتمع أو العلاقات بين الناس): يُستخدم لوصف الأنشطة والقضايا والمشكلات

EXPoverty is a serious **social** problem in many countries.**Sociable**

ودود / يحب الاختلاط بالناس

EXShe is a very **sociable** person who enjoys meeting new people.**Vision & Visual****Vision (noun)**

البصر - أو رؤية / هدف مستقبلي (فكرة واضحة عن المستقبل)

EXThe accident affected his **vision** permanently.**EX**The company has a clear **vision** for the future.**Visual (adjective / noun)**

بصري (شيء يُرى بالعين) / صورته أو عنصر مرئي

EX

Visual aids help students understand lessons better.

EXThe film has strong **visual** effects.**enthusiastic about & (an)enthusiast & enthusiasm(n)****enthusiastic about**

متحمس بـ

(an)enthusiast

شخص متحمس

enthusiasm(n)

حماسه

EXMy brother is **enthusiastic about** football .**EX**My brother is a football **enthusiast** .**EX**She showed great **enthusiasm** for the new project.

مصدر + to صفة \ ظرف + too

مصدر + enough to اسم

EXThe tea is **too** hot for me to drink .**EX**

The exam wasn't easy enough for me to answer.



READING

The Skills of a Change-Maker

Becoming a change-maker is not only about having great ideas; it's about developing the right skills to make those ideas real. Around the world, young people are discovering that passion alone is not enough – they must also learn how to plan, cooperate, and stay strong when facing challenges. Successful change-makers combine **enthusiasm** with practical abilities that turn vision into action.

First, they need excellent communication skills. They have to express their ideas clearly, listen carefully to others, and build trust within their teams. Without communication, even the most brilliant idea can be lost or misunderstood. Second, creative thinking is essential. Many social or environmental problems don't have simple answers. By using imagination and curiosity, change-makers can discover new solutions where others see **obstacles**. Teamwork is another key to success. Real change doesn't have to happen alone; it grows through cooperation. Good leaders inspire others, share responsibilities, and celebrate every small success together.

Finally, **perseverance** – the strength to continue despite failure or fear – **separates** dreamers from achievers. True change-makers need to learn from mistakes and keep moving forward with courage. When these skills work together, amazing things happen. Change-makers prove that no mountain is too high when communication, creativity, and cooperation walk side by side. The future belongs to those who are brave enough to act.



LISTENING

The Future Builders

Across Egypt and the Arab world, young women are shaping the future through science, engineering, and technology. Among them is Sarah Fathy, a 22-year-old software **developer** from Cairo, who designs apps that help people **with disabilities** access education and healthcare. Not only is Sarah skilled in coding, but she is also **passionate about** social change. When she was at university, Sarah had to work hard to balance her studies and her dream of creating technology for everyone. She needed to learn new programming languages and understand **accessibility** tools that could help people with special needs. Her team didn't have to buy expensive software; instead, they used free open-source programs to develop their first app.

Sarah realized that many people **lacked access** to online tools because of language **barriers** or physical challenges. She and her small team created an application that translates voice commands into Arabic and English. They had to test it many times before it worked perfectly. The project received national recognition and proved that no challenge is too great when innovation meets purpose. Today, Sarah believes that more women must join the tech field. She says that women don't have to wait for **permission** to lead; they only need to believe in themselves. Through workshops and mentorship programs, Sarah trains girls in coding and **digital literacy**. Her message is clear: we should never underestimate what a woman can build when she believes in herself.





KEY VOCABULARY EXERCISES

- 1 The students showed great when they started working on the school project.
 (a) strength (b) fear (c) enthusiasm (d) failure
- 2 Even when they face many, successful people never give up on their dreams.
 (a) mistakes (b) responsibilities (c) obstacles (d) abilities
- 3 Her helped her finish the long race even though she was very tired.
 (a) enthusiasm (b) fear (c) strength (d) perseverance
- 4 Perseverance is what dreamers from people who actually achieve their goals.
 (a) continues (b) separates (c) celebrates (d) listens

DEFINITIONS

- 5 is eagerness and lively interest or enjoyment in doing something.
 (a) Pessimism (b) Enthusiasm (c) Realism (d) Optimism
- 6 A/An is something that hinders or prevents progress or doing something.
 (a) article (b) circle (c) vehicle (d) obstacle
- 7 is having the strength to continue despite failure or fear.
 (a) Hindrance (b) Maintenance (c) Perseverance (d) Clearance
- 8 To means to divide or keep apart people or things.
 (a) separate (b) activate (c) educate (d) motivate

EXTRA VOCABULARY

- 9 She is a very artist whose paintings are sold in galleries all over the world.
 (a) expensive (b) successful (c) skilled (d) practical
- 10 True change-makers their big ideas with real work to help their community.
 (a) listen (b) build (c) inspire (d) combine
- 11 She has many skills that help her fix things easily around the house.
 (a) practical (b) essential (c) brilliant (d) environmental
- 12 She uses her in math to help her classmates with their difficult homework.
 (a) obstacles (b) mistakes (c) abilities (d) responsibilities
- 13 Words are good, but taking is what really makes a positive difference.
 (a) purpose (b) action (c) success (d) trust
- 14 Clear is very important so that everyone in the team understands the plan.
 (a) literacy (b) programming (c) accessibility (d) communication



- 15 You must express your ideas so that other people can follow your thoughts.
 a clearly b perfectly c amazing d simply
- 16 It is impossible to have a good friendship if there is no between people.
 a strength b curiosity c imagination d trust
- 17 His idea for the new application won him a big prize at the science fair.
 a brilliant b expensive c practical d skilled
- 18 She felt when her friends did not listen to her explanation about the problem.
 a achiever b developer c misunderstood d software
- 19 Clean water and healthy food are for all people to stay alive.
 a successful b essential c brilliant d amazing
- 20 Recycling is a good way to solve many problems in the modern world.
 a practical b technical c chemical d environmental
- 21 Artists use their to create beautiful things that no one has ever seen.
 a tools b commands c imagination d workshops
- 22 The child's led him to ask many questions about how the stars work.
 a curiosity b persevere c recognition d purpose
- 23 Scientists work hard every day to new ways to help protect the environment.
 a combine b inspire c celebrate d discover
- 24 Projects move much faster when there is among all the team members.
 a mentorship b programming c accessibility d cooperation
- 25 Hard work and perseverance are the main keys to in any big project.
 a purpose b action c success d trust
- 26 Good leaders others to do their best and work together for a better future.
 a inspire b separate c build d shape
- 27 Team members must share their to reach their common goal very quickly.
 a mistakes b abilities c responsibilities d obstacles
- 28 We should every small success to stay motivated and happy in our work.
 a discover b celebrate c combine d listen
- 29 She has the to continue even when she is very afraid of the challenge.
 a strength b curiosity c success d purpose
- 30 Do not let the fear of stop you from starting a new and exciting project.
 a achiever b failure c developer d software
- 31 Bravery means having the courage to face your and move forward anyway.
 a trust b imagination c enthusiasm d fear



32. A true is someone who works hard to turn their dreams into reality.
 a software b mistake c developer d achiever
33. It is okay to make as long as you learn from them and try again.
 a mistakes b abilities c obstacles d responsibilities
34. Sarah is a software who creates apps for healthcare and education.
 a player b developer c dreamer d achiever
35. Technology can give people with access to better education and jobs.
 a responsibilities b abilities c obstacles d disabilities
36. Access to good is essential for all people to live healthy lives.
 a success b trust c healthcare d purpose
37. She is highly in coding and can create complex programs easily.
 a skilled b environmental c practical d essential
38. Learning allows you to speak the language of modern computers.
 a communication b literacy c coding d accessibility
39. It is important to your studies with other activities like sports.
 a balance b shape c inspire d combine
40. She had to learn new languages to build the mobile application.
 a communication b literacy c accessibility d programming
41. She creates tools that help people with special needs use technology.
 a accessibility b environmental c practical d essential
42. Technology provides many that help people connect with each other easily.
 a commands b workshops c mentorship d tools
43. Her team created an that translates voice commands into Arabic.
 a developer b mistake c achiever d application
44. The phone follows voice so you do not have to touch the screen.
 a commands b workshops c mentorship d tools
45. They had to test the app many times until it worked
 a clearly b amazing c perfectly d skilled
46. The project received national for its help to the poor community.
 a purpose b recognition c action d trust
47. Innovation meets when technology is used to help people in need.
 a failure b strength c fear d purpose
48. programs help young people learn from experts in their field.
 a Mentorship b Tools c Commands d Workshops



49. Digital is very important for navigating the modern world successfully.
 a communication b literacy c accessibility d programming
50. You should never what a person can achieve if they believe in themselves.
 a build b shape c continue d underestimate
51. The new features make it easier for blind people to use the app.
 a accessibility b communication c literacy d programming
52. Many students attended the to learn how to create their own websites.
 a commands b tools c workshops d mentorship

PREPOSITIONS AND PHRASES

53. Sarah is very passionate helping people with disabilities access education.
 a with b about c for d from
54. You do not have to for permission to lead and make a positive change.
 a bait b gate c mate d wait
55. The future will eventually to those who are brave enough to act today.
 a along b among c belong d prolong
56. Perseverance is a very important to success in any difficult project.
 a key b tea c sea d bee
57. Change-makers must learn from their mistakes and keep moving toward their goals.
 a upward b downward c forward d awkward
58. It is important to strong and keep your courage when facing obstacles.
 a play b stay c pray d gray
59. Good leaders inspire others and responsibilities among all team members.
 a care b dare c fare d share
60. Young women are helping to the future of Egypt through science and technology.
 a shape b tape c grape d drape
61. You should work hard every day to the right skills to make your ideas real.
 a sleep b sweep c keep d develop
62. Using thinking is essential for finding new solutions to social problems.
 a native b creative c relative d active



SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS

63. The students showed great enthusiasm for the community garden project. the synonyms for 'enthusiasm' are:
 a) eagerness b) boredom c) apathy d) excitement e) laziness
64. Successful change-makers combine enthusiasm with hard work and action. the antonyms for 'enthusiasm' are:
 a) excitement b) boredom c) apathy d) dedication e) hurdle
65. Lack of funding can be a major obstacle when starting a new recycling business. the synonyms for 'obstacle' are:
 a) advantage b) barrier c) bridge d) aid e) hurdle
66. He viewed every difficulty as an obstacle to his personal success. the antonyms for 'obstacle' are:
 a) barrier b) hurdle c) aid d) advantage e) divide
67. It takes a lot of perseverance to keep working when you face failure or fear. the synonyms for 'perseverance' are:
 a) dedication b) persistence c) laziness d) surrender e) apathy
68. Perseverance is an essential skill for any software developer today. the antonyms for 'perseverance' are:
 a) persistence b) dedication c) laziness d) surrender e) businesslike

WRITING SKILLS

A Campaign Poster

A campaign poster is a visual advertisement designed to promote a cause, idea, event and encourage people to take action.

الملصق الدعائي هو إعلان بصري يُصمَّم للترويج لقضية أو فكرة أو حدث، ويشجّع الناس على اتخاذ إجراء.

How to Write a Campaign Poster.

Steps to write a campaign poster

Choose a clear and powerful title: e.g., "Save Water Today!/" Protect Our Planet!

اختر عنواناً واضحاً وقوياً: مثل "وفر المياه اليوم!/" احموا كوكبنا

Use short, direct sentences: Posters must be easy to read quickly.

استخدم جملًا قصيرة ومباشرة: يجب أن تكون الملصقات سهلة القراءة بسرعة.



Use imperative forms (commands): Join us! / Don't waste! / Keep our city clean!

استخدم صيغ الأمر: انضم إلينا! / لا تسرف! / حافظ على نظافة المدينة

Add key details: Time, place, goal, contact info.

أضف التفاصيل الرئيسية: الوقت، المكان، الهدف، معلومات التواصل.

Use positive and motivating language: Together we can make a difference!

استخدم لغة إيجابية ومحفزة: معاً يمكننا أن نحدث فرقاً!

Make it attractive: Use bullets, icons, or short slogans./ eye-catching visuals

اجعله جذاباً: استخدم النقاط، الأيقونات، أو الشعارات القصيرة.

Target Vocabulary: campaign, volunteer, environment, recycling, awareness.

مفردات مستهدفة: حملة، متطوع، بيئة، إعادة تدوير، وعي.

Model Text: Let's make our community a greener and cleaner place.

نص النموذج: لنجعل مجتمعنا مكاناً أكثر خضرة ونظافة.

Useful expressions: Let's... / We should... / Don't forget to... / Join us to... / Together we can

هيا بنا... / يجب علينا... / لا تنسوا أن... / انضموا إلينا... /

Model Poster

Join the "Clean Future" Campaign!

Let's make our community a greener and cleaner place.

Every year, tons of waste harm our beautiful environment.

Join our recycling and clean-up campaign this Saturday!

When: 9:00 a.m. – 1:00 p.m.

Where: Nile Park, Alexandria

We should protect our city and keep it clean for future generations.

Bring your friends and family – everyone is welcome!

Together we can build a cleaner, healthier, and happier Egypt.

Contact us: cleanfuture@gmail.com

EXERCISES ON WRITING SKILLS

1 Posters are designed differently than essays because they must be

a easy to read quickly

b fifty pages long

c full of long paragraphs

d written in tiny font

2 Short, direct sentences prevent the reader from

a walking

b talking

c sleeping

d getting confused



3. Using icons and bullet points on a poster makes the information
a harder to see
b very boring
c attractive and easy to scan
d invisible

4. A campaign poster's title needs to be to be effective.
a ten words long
b written in a code
c invisible
d powerful and catchy

5. Why do campaign posters use imperatives like "Join us!" or "Save water!"?
a To ask a secret
b To give a strong call to action
c To tell a story
d To write a poem

6. To make your poster look organized and attractive, you should use
a giant paragraphs
b bullets and icons
c invisible ink
d very small letters

7. The phrase "Don't waste!" is written in the form.
a imperative (command)
b past tense
c future tense
d dictionary

8. A short, catchy phrase used to remember a campaign is called a
a chapter
b slogan
c textbook
d homework

9. "Let's make our community greener!" is a sentence used to show a
a goal
b problem
c price
d date

10. Why should you add "contact info" to your campaign poster ?
a To show your grade
b To win a prize
c To write a story
d So people can ask questions

11. Using positive and motivating language helps to the audience.
a bore
b scare
c ignore
d inspire

12. If you want to write a poster about saving the Earth, which word is most suitable?
a Shopping
b Environment
c Cooking
d Gaming

13. "Together we can build a happier Egypt" is a motivating
a motto
b address
c phone number
d name

14. When creating a poster, you should choose a title that is
a five pages long
b written in a code
c powerful and clear
d a math equation



SKILLS CORNER

Shaimaa Farghally

Read the passage , then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

In June 2018, a remarkable rescue operation took place in northern Thailand when twelve young boys and their football coach became trapped inside the Tham Luang Cave. After football practice, the group entered the cave to explore, but sudden heavy rainfall caused flooding that blocked their exit. The rising water forced them deeper inside, leaving them without food, light, or a way out.

When the boys did not return home, their families told the authorities. A massive rescue mission was launched involving Thai Navy SEALs, local volunteers, and international cave-diving experts from several countries. After nine days of searching, divers finally located the group alive on a rocky ledge deep inside the cave. The boys were weak but in good spirits, showing incredible courage despite the situation.

The cave passages were narrow, dark, and filled with muddy water. Each boy had to be guided by experienced divers while wearing oxygen masks. Sadly, a Thai Navy SEAL lost his life during the rescue operation, reminding the world of the risks involved.

After eighteen days in the cave, all thirteen were safely rescued. The incident highlighted the power of teamwork, bravery, and international cooperation in overcoming even the most difficult challenges.

1 What is the main idea of the passage?

- a A successful rescue through teamwork
- b A dangerous cave exploration for fun
- c The geography of caves in Thailand
- d A football team winning an important match

2 What caused the group to become trapped?

- a A landslide
- b Heavy rainfall
- c An earthquake
- d A cave collapse

3 Why was the rescue operation difficult?

- a The boys refused help
- b The boys refused help
- c The rescuers lacked equipment
- d The passages were hard to work in

4 What would most likely have happened if international divers had not helped?

- a The boys would have escaped easily on their own
- b The cave would have dried up quickly
- c The rescue would have been delayed or unsuccessful
- d The boys would have been free

5 What tragic event occurred during the rescue preparations?

- a A boy became seriously ill
- b The cave collapsed
- c The rescue was cancelled
- d One of the rescuers died



6 What does the word "oxygen masks" suggest about the rescue conditions?

- a) The cave was very cold
b) The rescue was fast
c) The air was unsafe to breathe normally
d) The boys were injured

7 What lesson does the incident mainly teach?

- a) Exploring caves is unsafe
b) Teamwork and bravery matter
c) Sharing happy moments is fun
d) Rain should be avoided

TRANSLATION

Choose the correct English translation:

1 نفخر بوطننا، ونحترم تاريخه، ونحافظ على ثقافته، ونعمل معًا لخدمته بإخلاص، لأن الانتماء الصادق يعزز الوحدة، والمسؤولية والأمل، ويقوّي مستقبلنا المشترك دائمًا.

- a) We take pride in our country, respect its history, protect its culture, and work together to serve it sincerely, because true belonging strengthens unity, responsibility, hope, and always strengthens our shared future.
b) We take pride in our country, respect its history, save its culture, and work together to serve it sincerely, because true belongings strength unity, responsibility, hope, and always strengthens our shared future.
c) We take proud in our country, respect its history, protect its culture, and work alone to serve it carelessly, because true belongings strength unity, responsibility, hope, and always strengthens our private future.
d) We take proud in our country, forget its history, save its culture, and work together to serve it sincerely, because true belonging strengthens unity, irresponsibility, hope, and always strengthens our shared past.

2 يعكس تراث مصر الغني حضارات متعاقبة، ويجمع بين الآثار القديمة، والفنون، والعادات التي ما زالت حية تتعلم منها الأجيال.

- a) Egypt's rich heritage reflects successive civilizations including ancient monuments, arts, and living traditions from which generations learn.
b) Egypt's rich heritage reflects successive civilizations and include ancient moments, arts, and living traditions which generations learn from.
c) Egypt's rich heritage reflects successive civilizations included ancient monuments, arts, and living traditions that generations learn from.
d) Egypt's rich heritage reflects successive civilizations and includes ancient moments, arts, and living traditions from that generations learn.



Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 Optimism creates positive attitude, motivates effort, and helps people overcome problems, believe in themselves, and succeed through hard work every single day.

- a) يخلق التفاؤل توجّها إيجابيا، ويحفّز الجهد، ويساعد الناس على تجاوز المشكلات، والإيمان بأنفسهم، والنجاح عبر العمل الجاد كل يوم.
- b) يخلق التفاؤل توجّها سلبيا، ويحفّز الجهد، ويساعد الناس على تجاوز المشكلات، والإيمان بأنفسهم، والنجاح عبر العمل الجاد كل يوم.
- c) يخلق التفاؤل توجّها إيجابيا، ويثبّت الجهد، ويساعد الناس على تجاوز المشكلات، والإيمان بأنفسهم، والنجاح عبر العمل الجاد كل يوم.
- d) يخلق التفاؤل توجّها إيجابيا، ويحفّز الجهد، ويمنع الناس على تجاوز المشكلات، والإيمان بأنفسهم، والفشل عبر العمل الجاد كل يوم.

2 Voluntary work teaches young people empathy, discipline, cooperation, and pride while supporting communities through shared effort and meaningful service together.

- a) يعلّم العمل التطوعي الأطفال التعاطف والانضباط والتعاون والفخر، مع دعم المجتمعات من خلال الجهد المشترك والخدمة الهادفة معًا.
- b) يعلّم العمل التطوعي الشباب التعاطف والانضباط والمنافسة والفخر، مع دعم المجتمعات من خلال الجهد المشترك والخدمة الهادفة معًا.
- c) يعلّم العمل التطوعي الشباب التعاطف والانضباط والتعاون والفخر، مع دعم المدارس من خلال الجهد المشترك والخدمة الهادفة معًا.
- d) يعلّم العمل التطوعي الشباب التعاطف والانضباط والتعاون والفخر، مع دعم المجتمعات من خلال الجهد المشترك والخدمة الهادفة معًا.





TEST ON UNIT 8

A.Vocabulary and Structures (14 Marks)

1 Choose the Two (2) correct answers out of the Five (5) options given: (2 Marks)

1 The students showed great enthusiasm during the science fair. Two words that give the same meaning are

- a eagerness b boredom c excitement d depression e neglect

2 Steve Jobs was a famous change-maker in technology. The synonym of the underlined word is

- a reformer b traditionalist c follower d innovator e barrier

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (12 Marks)

1 The government launched a new to provide free internet to rural schools.

- a initiative b persistence c innovation d obstacle

2 The charity event aimed to for the children living in the refugee camp.

- a light a spark of hope b give access to
c make those ideas real d turn vision into action

3 Constant is required when you are trying to solve a very complex scientific problem.

- a enthusiasm b persistence c recognition d initiative

4 The path to success is often blocked by an that requires creative thinking to bypass.

- a access b obstacle c enthusiasm d passion

5 An person is able to put themselves in someone else's shoes.

- a enthusiastic b empathetic c separate d persisting

6 The award was a formal of her hard work and dedication to the hospital.

- a recognition b initiative c teamwork d passion

7 What is the primary purpose of a campaign poster?

- a To tell a long story b To list all facts
c To encourage action d To entertain readers

8 Which of the following is a clear title for a poster about volunteering?

- a Join Our Volunteer Program! b There are volunteers in many places.
c Volunteering is important sometimes. d Many people volunteer occasionally.

9 Dad always tells me that I be home before 9.

- a must b have to c mustn't d don't have to



10 I to the supermarket yesterday because my husband had already bought everything we needed. We just stayed home and relaxed."

- a) needn't have gone b) had to go
c) didn't have to go d) must have gone

11 This means that I will probably take a taxi rather than a bus in the morning.

- a) must b) has to c) have to d) don't have to

12 Dad: You be here before 9 or I won't let you play outdoors again.

- a) must b) have to c) mustn't d) don't have to

B. Reading (7 Marks)

3 Read the following passage, then answer the question:

The sinking of the Titanic remains one of the most heartbreaking maritime disasters in history. Built with advanced technology and luxury beyond imagination, the ship was considered a symbol of human achievement. In the beginning of April 1912, the Titanic started its **maiden voyage** from Southampton to New York, carrying passengers from different social classes, ranging from wealthy businessmen to hopeful immigrants. Despite receiving several iceberg warnings, the ship continued to sail at high speed through the icy waters of the North Atlantic.

Late on April 14, the Titanic shocked with an iceberg, tearing a long gash in its body. Water rapidly flooded the lower rooms and the ship's design could not prevent its eventual sinking. A major reason for the high death number was poor planning. The Titanic carried lifeboats for only about half of **those** on board, as safety measures at that time were outdated. Confusion, delayed evacuation, and class divisions further increased the loss of life. Many third-class passengers struggled to reach the lifeboats in time.

Within hours, the ship sank beneath the freezing ocean, taking over 1,500 lives with it. The disaster forced governments to improve maritime laws, including lifeboat requirements and emergency communication systems, making sea travel safer for future generations.

1 The Titanic was mainly seen as a symbol of

- a) wealth and power b) human achievement
c) military strength d) scientific research

2 What does the phrase "maiden voyage" mean?

- a) A safe journey b) A rescue mission
c) A return trip d) The first journey

3 Which factor did NOT directly increase the death number?

- a) Poor evacuation planning b) Outdated safety laws
c) Lack of lifeboats d) Calm sea conditions

4 How did the crew respond to the iceberg warnings?

- a) They changed course b) They evacuated the ship immediately
c) They slowed down slightly d) They ignored all signals



- 5 The underlined word "those" refers to
- a passengers b lifeboats c warnings d rooms
- 6 What lesson was learned from the disaster?
- a Ships should be smaller b Icebergs should be destroyed
c Sea travel is unsafe d Safety laws must be improved
- 7 The passage mainly focuses on
- a the construction of the Titanic b life in the 20th century
c a detailed rescue operation d causes and consequences of the tragedy

C. Translation (4 Marks)

4 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation: (2 marks)

- 1 Saving the environment requires responsible actions, reducing waste, conserving energy, protecting wildlife, and educating communities to ensure a healthier future for everyone.

- a ان تدمير البيئة يتطلب اجراءات غير مسئولة لتقليل النفائات، والحفاظ على الطاقة، وحماية الحياة البرية، وتثقيف المجتمعات لضمان مستقبل اكثر صحة للجميع.
- b ان إنقاذ البيئة يتطلب إجراءات مسؤولية، وزيادة النفائات، والحفاظ على الطاقة، وحماية الحياة البرية، وتثقيف المجتمعات لضمان مستقبل افضل للجميع.
- c ان إنقاذ البيئة يتطلب إجراءات مسؤولية، وتقليل النفائات، والحفاظ على الطاقة، وحماية الحياة البحرية، وتدمير المجتمعات لضمان مستقبل أكثر صحة للشباب.
- d ان إنقاذ البيئة يتطلب إجراءات مسؤولية، وتقليل النفائات، والحفاظ على الطاقة، وحماية الحياة البرية، وتثقيف المجتمعات لضمان مستقبل اكثر صحة للجميع.

B) Choose the correct English translation: (2 marks)

- 1 ان تراث مصر الغني يعكس حضارة عريقة تجمع بين التاريخ والفنون والعمارة القديمة وتلهم الأجيال للحفاظ على الهوية الوطنية الخالدة عبر العصور المختلفة.

- a Egypt's rich heritage reflects an ancient civilization combining history, arts, and architecture, inspiring generations to preserve national identity through different ages.
- b Egypt's rich heritage reflects an ancient civilization combining history, poetry, and architecture, inspiring youth to preserve national identity throw different ages.
- c Egypt's rich heritage reflects a modern civilization combining history, arts, and architecture, inspiring generations to preserve international identity through different ages.
- d Egypt's rich heritage reflects an ancient civilization combining stories, arts, and architecture, inspiring generations to preserve national identity through different worlds.



D. Novel (1 marks)

5 Answer the following questions:

1 Why did Passepartout panic when they missed the Carnatic, while Phileas Fogg remained calm and controlled?

2 Why did Phileas Fogg reward John Bunsby generously?

E. Writing

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets to give the same meaning: (1 mark)

1 There is no need for him to worry about the results. (needn't)

2 Did you have to work late last night? (Was)

7 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following topic : (3 marks)

What change would you like to make in your school or community?

Da7ee-7Englizzy

في
اللة الانجليزية

Unit 9 When Art Speaks



Mrs.

Shaimaa Farghally

انجليزي بقعد في الدماغ



Part One: Lessons 1 & 2

KEY VOCABULARY

compassion (n.)	تعاطف / رحمة	inspiring (adj.)	مُلهم
compassionate (adj.)	متعاطف / رحيم	invisibility (n.)	الخفاء
echo (v.) (n.)	يردد / يتردد صداه / صدى	invisible (adj.)	خفي / غير مرئي
gather (v.)	يجمع	mural (n.)	جدارية
gesture (v.) (n.)	يوميء / إيماءة	skyline (n.)	الأفق / معالم المدينة
inspiration (n.)	إلهام	storyteller (n.)	راوي القصة
inspire (v.)	يلهم	tradition (n.)	تقليد / عَرَف
inspired (adj.)	مُلهم	traditional (adj.)	تقليدي

DEFINITIONS:

compassion تعاطف	showing care for others
echo صدى	a sound that is repeated or continued
gather يتجمع	to come together in a group
gestures إيماءات	movements of hands or body used to express meaning
inspiring ملهم	something that encourages good actions or feelings
invisible غير مرئي	unable to be seen or noticed
mural جدارية	a large picture painted on a wall
skyline أفق المدينة	the outline of buildings seen against the sky
storyteller راوي قصص	a person who creates and shares stories
tradition تقليد	something repeated or passed down through generations

EXTRA VOCABULARY

alive حي / مفعم بالحياة	amazed مندهش	artist فنان
attention انتباه	attract يجذب	audience جمهور
beauty جمال	coffee house مقهي	courage شجاعة



decoration	زينة	discourage	يثبط العزيمة/يعوق	dove	حمامة
dust	غبار	elderly	مسن/كبير السن	encourage	يشجع
folktale	حكاية شعبية	friendship	صداقة	gentle	لطيف / رقيق
gray	رمادي	heal	يشفي / يداوي	history	تاريخ
honest	صادق / أمين	honesty	صدق / أمانة	hope	أمل
humor	فكاهة	journalist	صحفي	kindness	طيبة / لطف
meaning	معنى	merchant	تاجر	modern	حديث
movement	حركة	narrow	ضيق	behavior	سلوك
brave	شجاع	brighter	أكثر إشراقاً	broken	محطم / مكسور
brush	فرشة ألوان	challenge	تحدي	clever	ذكي
neighborhood	أحياء سكنية	offer	يعرض	paints	أصباغ / ألوان
podcaster	مقدم بودكاست	pollution	تلوث	raise	يرفع
reflect	يعكس	rise	يصعد / يرتفع	scene	مشهد
serious	جاد	silence	صمت	soldier	جندي
spirit	روح	spread	ينتشر	symbol	رمز
tale	حكاية	travel	يسافر	unemployment	بطالة
unity	وحدة	voice	صوت	wisdom	حكمة
once-forgotten	كان منسياً ذات مرة	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي		

You Tuber

يوتيوبر (مقدم محتوى على اليوتيوب)

SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS

Word

attention

انتباه / اهتمام

care for

يعتني بـ

Synonyms

interest , notice

look after , nurse

Antonyms

neglect , indifference

إهمال ، عدم اهتمام

neglect , ignore

يهمل ، يتجاهل

**compassion**

عطف / رحمة

sympathy , empathy

apathy , indifference

لا مبالاة ، فتور

discourage

يحبط / يثبط

daunt , depress

encourage , comfort

يشجع ، يريح

gather

يجمع

assemble , collect

disperse , separate

يفرق ، يفصل

inspiring

ملهـم

encouraging , exciting

tedious , dull

ممل ، باهت

invisible

غير مرئي

unseen , concealed

visible , apparent

مرئي ، ظاهر

EXPRESSIONS, COLLOCATIONS AND PREPOSITIONS

act **with** compassion

يتصرف بتعاطف

run **on** stories

يقوم على القصص

filled **with** dust

مليء بالغبار

speak **for** hope

تحدثت باسم الأمل

fine arts

الفنون الجميلة

on the wall

على الجدار

in silence

في صمت

keep **alive**

يبقي حياً

COLLOCATIONS

change tone

يغير النبرة

mix colors

يخلط الألوان

grow old

يتقدم في العمر

retell folktales

يعيد رواية الحكايات الشعبية

hope **for** future

أمل في المستقبل

solve a problem

يحل مشكلة

LANGUAGE NOTES

publish , spread & prevail

publish

يعلن - ينشر (كتاب)

EXHe works for a company that **publishes** reference books.**spread**

ينشر - ينتشر (امراض - اخبار)

EXTerrorism **spreads** panic among all classes of society.**prevail**

يسود - يعم (عدل - سلام)

EXJustice will **prevail** over tyranny.



raise, rise, arise & arouse

raise (d) + مفعول

يربى حيوانات / يجمع مال / يرفع

EX Raise your hand if you want to answer.

EX He raised a lot of money a broad.

EX His uncle raises cattle and sheep.

rise - rose - risen

يرتفع / تشرق / ينهض ليحيى شخص / يستيقظ (بدون مفعول)

EX The sun rises in the east.

EX I rise at 6.00 in the morning.

EX When the visitor entered, all students rose.

arise - arose - arisen

يزيد عن الحد / يحتدم / ينشأ (بدون مفعول)

EX A lot of problems arise because of misunderstanding.

arouse (مفعول) aroused

يثير / يوقظ

EX His behaviour aroused the suspicion of the police.

READING

Voices On The Wall: The Wall That Spoke for Hope

In one of Alexandria's oldest neighborhoods, narrow streets once filled with dust and broken walls began to change. It all started with a young artist named Salma Nasser, a fine arts student who believed that art could heal people's spirits. She noticed how the gray walls made her neighbors feel sad and **invisible**. One day, she carried her brushes and paints to the street and began to draw a large **mural** of a white dove rising above the city **skyline**. Beneath it, she wrote the words: "Peace begins here." At first, people watched in silence. Then a child offered to help her mix colors. The next day, more students joined in, painting scenes of kindness, friendship, and clean streets. Their work attracted attention on social media. Tourists and journalists began visiting the neighborhood. The once-forgotten walls became a symbol of unity and hope. Soon, the movement spread to other cities like Cairo and Fayoum. For Salma, the murals were more than decoration – they were **inspiring** messages that encouraged people to act with **compassion**. She said, "Art can speak louder than words. When people see beauty and meaning around them, they change their behavior." Today, Salma's neighborhood is brighter, cleaner, and more alive than ever. The walls continue to tell their story.





LISTENING

The Art of Storytelling

In the evenings of old Cairo, long before television and social media, people used to **gather** in coffee houses to listen to **traditional storytellers**. One of the most famous was Uncle Farid, an elderly man with a deep gentle voice. He would begin every tale by raising his hand and saying, 'Listen, and you will travel without moving.' Farid's stories mixed history, humor, and wisdom. He told of brave soldiers, honest merchants, and clever children who solved problems with kindness. But he didn't read from a book; he watched his audience carefully, changing his tone and **gestures** to keep them amazed. When children laughed, he smiled. When they looked serious, he slowed his words. Even in modern times, new storytellers keep this art alive online. Egyptian you tubers and podcasters retell folktales or invent new ones that reflect today's challenges, such as unemployment, pollution, and hope for the future. Their voices reach thousands, proving that storytelling never dies; it simply finds new stages. "The world runs on stories," Farid once said. They remind us that courage and honesty never grow old. His chair in the cafe is now empty, but his spirit still **echoes** in every story told under Cairo's warm lights.



KEY VOCABULARY EXERCISES

- 1 Oxygen is a/an gas that we cannot see, yet we need it to survive.
 a invisible b visible c incredible d flexible
- 2 The Burj Khalifa is the most recognizable building in the Dubai
 a outline b baseline c deadline d skyline
- 3 Lighting candles on a birthday cake is a common in many cultures.
 a gesture b repetition c tradition d condition
- 4 The coach gave a/an speech that motivated the team to win the game.
 a inspiring b tiring c expiring d desiring
- 5 The voice of the old storyteller still in every story told under the city lights.
 a follows b arrives c runs d echoes
- 6 Ahmed changed his tone and used hand to keep all the children amazed.
 a features b gestures c neighbours d merchants
- 7 Long before television, families loved to sit and listen to the traditional
 a storytellers b podcasters c journalists d you tubers
- 8 In the evenings, people used to in coffee houses to listen to traditional tales.
 a gather b listen c spread d reach



9 The inspiring messages on the walls encouraged people to act with toward others.

- a transition b compassion c expansion d profession

10 The student carried her brushes and paints to the street to paint a large of a white dove.

- a decoration b symbol c background d mural

DEFINITIONS

11 To is to give someone new and creative ideas.

- a acquire b inquire c inspire d require

12 A movement of hands or body used to express meaning is a

- a culture b mixture c fracture d gesture

13 The outline of buildings seen against the sky is the

- a storyteller b skyline c guideline d tradition

14 To come together in a group is to

- a bother b echo c hesitate d gather

15 If something is unable to be seen or noticed, it is

- a visible b possible c invisible d inspiring

16 Something that encourages good actions or feelings is

- a inspiring b tiring c expiring d desiring

17 A person who creates and shares stories is a

- a bookseller b storyteller c retailer d teller

18 Something repeated or passed down through generations is a

- a audition b repetition c tradition d condition

19 A sound that is repeated or continued is a/an

- a gather b tradition c mural d echo

20 Showing care for others is defined as

- a passion b compassion c impression d obsession

EXTRA VOCABULARY

21 We often go to our grandparents when we need some sound advice and

- a wisdom b rhythm c custom d system

22 To money for charity, the students organized a bake sale.

- a rinse b arouse c rise d raise



- 23 National is essential for the strength and progress of any society.
 a purity b humidity c unity d honesty
- 24 The olive branch is a well-known of peace around the world.
 a cymbal b symbol c gamble d simple
- 25 The sailor told us a fascinating about a giant sea monster.
 a tale b sale c tail d male
- 26 He has a great sense of and always knows how to make us laugh.
 a tradition b history c humor d mural
- 27 I value your more than anything else in our friendship. You never lie.
 a honesty b majesty c remedy d policy
- 28 Many teenagers spend too much time on instead of doing their homework.
 a social circle b social media c social status d social worker
- 29 A famous interviewed the scientist about her new discovery today.
 a forecaster b paymaster c podcaster d ringmaster
- 30 The historian discovered a diary in the attic of the old library.
 a once-forbidden b once-beaten c once-written d once-forgotten
- 31 The white has been a symbol of peace in many cultures for centuries.
 a glove b stove c dove d drove
- 32 It took a lot of for the young boy to admit he was wrong.
 a luggage b courage c passage d storage
- 33 Please pay close to the safety instructions before we start the experiment.
 a affection b addiction c position d attention
- 34 Even after the terrible accident, the doctors were happy to see that the driver was
 a alike b alive c alone d adrift
- 35 Parents are often judged by the of their children in public places.
 a belief b relief c brief d behavior
- 36 Salma believed that art could people's spirits and make them feel much happier.
 a gather b heal c travel d retell
- 37 At first, the local people watched the young painter in before they offered to help her.
 a humor b wisdom c history d silence
- 38 The scenes on the wall showed acts of and friendship among all the students.
 a attention b kindness c movement d unemployment



39. Painting together helped the residents feel a sense of and work as one team.
 a unity b friendship c compassion d honesty
40. When people see and meaning around them, they often change how they act.
 a dust b pain c fear d beauty
41. He told tales of honest who traveled across the desert to sell their goods.
 a storytellers b podcasters c merchants d neighbors
42. The storyteller watched his carefully to see if they were enjoying the tale.
 a audience b kindness c attention d spirit
43. Egyptian share folktales and new stories with thousands of people online today.
 a podcasters b journalists c tourists d soldiers
44. Many young people face the problem of when they cannot find a good job.
 a humor b wisdom c history d unemployment
45. Several wrote stories in the newspaper about how art changed the old streets.
 a merchants b journalists c podcasters d soldiers
46. Art can louder than words when people see beauty and meaning around them.
 a spread b gather c speak d reach
47. Long before television, people sat together in to hear exciting stories.
 a murals b skylines c coffee houses d symbols
48. New storytellers retell old that reflect today's challenges on the internet.
 a merchants b neighbors c podcasters d folktales
49. The world on stories that remind us of courage and honesty.
 a runs b echoes c spreads d grows
50. Mahfouz's still echoes in every story told under the warm city lights.
 a dust b spirit c symbol d brush

PREPOSITIONS AND PHRASES

51. After the sandstorm, the entire living room was filled dust.
 a on b up c with d in
52. We need a leader who can for hope in times of national crisis.
 a look b listen c think d speak
53. Michelangelo is considered one of the greatest masters of arts in history.
 a high b fine c line d tall



54. The students sat in total as they waited for their exam results.
 a) noise b) sound c) silence d) music
55. It is important for older generations to folktales so that children don't forget their roots.
 a) retell b) solve c) change d) act

SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS

56. The speaker gave an inspiring talk that motivated the students to work harder. The synonyms for 'inspiring' are:
 a) encouraging b) tedious c) exciting d) dull e) tiresome
57. Please gather all the necessary documents before the meeting starts. The synonyms for 'gather' are:
 a) separate b) assemble c) disperse d) collect e) dissipate
58. The doctor treated the poor family with great compassion and kindness. The antonyms for 'compassion' are:
 a) sympathy b) apathy c) indifference d) empathy e) pity
59. The ink used in the secret message becomes invisible once it dries. The synonyms for 'invisible' are:
 a) unseen b) visible c) apparent d) concealed e) plain
60. It is a long-standing tradition in our village to celebrate the harvest every year. The antonyms for 'tradition' are:
 a) custom b) culture c) change d) belief e) innovation
61. Students must pay close attention to the safety instructions in the lab. The antonyms for 'attention' are:
 a) interest b) neglect c) notice d) indifference e) mind
62. Do not let one bad grade discourage you from pursuing your dreams. The antonyms for 'discourage' are:
 a) encourage b) daunt c) depress d) comfort e) bother



GRAMMAR

STATIVE VERBS

أفعال الحالة
أنهاء الأفعال

Stative verbs 
الأفعال التقريرية

هي أفعال تصف حالة ولا تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة

وهي أفعال : الحواس والمشاعر والتفكير والآراء والامتلاك والقياس والحالات والسمات.
ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال

be**love****hate****dislike****seem ... etc**

Mustafa is loving tennis. (X)

Mustafa loves tennis. (✓)

Dynamic (Action) Verbs 
أفعال الحركة

هي أفعال تصف حدث أو حركة ويمكن أن تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة ، ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال:

play**visit****build****help****write ... etc.**

He is repairing the car. (✓)

He repairs the car . (✓)

Verbs that are both Dynamic and Statives 
الأفعال التقريرية والحركية

الأفعال دي بتوصف حاجات بتحصل أو حركة وتستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة، وفي نفس الوقت ممكن تبقى حالة مش حركة ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال :

be**have****see****smell****taste ... etc.**

She has dinner at 7 يتناول (✓)

She is having dinner يتناول (✓)

She has a camera يمتلك (✓)

She is having a camera يمتلك (X)

EX 11 I can't come to the phone now. I a shower.

a am having

b have

c am doing

d will have

EX 12 The cake absolutely delicious.

a taste

b tastes

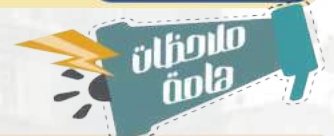
c is tasting

d tasting



أهم الأفعال التقريرية

like	يحب	prefer	يفضل	taste	يعطي مذاق ...
love	يحب	cost	تبلغ تكلفته	imagine	يتخيل
dislike	يكره	measure	يبلغ مقاسه...	suppose	يفترض
hate	يكره	believe	يعتقد	owe	يدين بـ
wish	يتمنى	remember	يتذكر	own	يمتلك
include	يشمل / يتضمن	understand	يفهم	feel	يعطي ملمس / يعتقد
weigh	يبلغ وزنه...	belong	ينتمي إلى / يخص	hear	يسمع
forget	ينسى	have	يمتلك	look	يبدو
think	يعتقد	possess	يمتلك	seem	يبدو
miss	يشاق لـ / يفقد	see	يرى	mean	يعني / يقصد
need	يحتاج	recognize	يتعرف على	know	يعرف
want	يريد	smell	يعطي رائحة ...	mind	يمنع



لا تستخدم الأفعال التقريرية في الأزمنة المستمرة ، ويتم استخدام اقرب زمن بسيط حسب الجملة.

She is having a tablet. (X)

She has a tablet. (✓)

EX 13 You can borrow my camera. I it at the moment.

- a) not need b) am not needing
c) doesn't need d) don't need

EX 14 His voice familiar. I am sure I know him.

- a) sound b) sounds
c) is sounding d) has been sounding

EX 15 me to carry this box for you now?

- a) Are you wanting b) Did you want
c) Are you wanted d) Do you want

EX 16 Most scientists that the world is getting hotter.

- a) are believing b) believe
c) are believed d) are being believed



IMPORTANT EXCEPTIONS

استثناءات هامة

الفعل

Stative usage

(لا يستخدم في أزمنة مستمرة)

am/is/are/was/were

يكون / يوجد

Ahmed is being very intelligent. (X)

Ahmed is very intelligent. (✓)

Dynamic meaning

(يستخدم في أزمنة مستمرة)

am/is/are/was/were + being

يصبح - يتصرف

Nada is boring. (✓)

= She is boring by nature.

She is nervous at the moment. (✓)

= She is being nervous at the moment. It isn't her habit.

(It's temporary)

be

يستخدم الفعل **be** كفعل أساسي في الأزمنة المستمرة للحديث عن مشاعر:

He is being happy now. (X)

He is happy now. (✓)

يستخدم الفعل **be** كفعل أساسي في الأزمنة المستمرة ويأتي بعده اسم أو صفة للحديث عن أحداث أو تصرفات وليس عن مشاعر أو وصف حالة دائمة:

He is being very silly.

= He is behaving in a silly way

Sara is being stupid.

= Sara is doing stupid things

feel

يعتقد - يعطى ملمس

I am feeling he will win the race. (X)

I feel he will win the race. (✓)

The blanket is feeling soft. (X)

The blanket feels soft. (✓)

يشعر

He is feeling better today. (✓)

He is feeling the new clothes. (✓)

**have****have/has/had:**

يملك

He is **having** a car. (X)He **has** a car. (✓)She **was having** a car. (X)She **had** a car. (✓)**have = eat/drink/spend**

يأكل / يشرب / يقضي

He is **having** a nice time. (✓)

= He is spending a nice time.

We **were having** lunch. (✓)

= We were eating lunch.

measure

يبلغ مقاسه

The building is **measuring** five meters in height. (X)The building **measures** five meters in height. (✓)

يقيس

He is **measuring** the room to check if the sofa will fit. (✓)**see****see**

يرى

He is **seeing** some familiar faces in the crowd. (X)He **sees** some familiar faces in the crowd. (✓)**see = visit or meet**

يقابل

She is **seeing** the dentist in the afternoon. (✓)**smell**

يعطي رائحة - له رائحة

This cake is **smelling** delicious. (X)This **cake** **smells** delicious. (✓)

يشم

I am **smelling** the food. (✓)

**taste**

يعطى مذاق - له مذاق

This soup is **tasting** a bit too salty . (X)This soup **tastes** a bit too salty . (✓)

يذوق - يتذوق

My sister is **tasting** the soup . (✓)My sister **was tasting** the soup when she noticed it was too salty . (✓)**think**

يعتقد

I am **thinking** she is ill . (X)I **think** she is ill . (✓)

يفكر

I am **thinking** about the best solution to this problem . (✓)**weigh**

يبلغ وزنه

The table is **weighing** a hundred kilograms . (X)The table **weighs** a hundred kilograms. (✓)

يزن

The person is **weighing** the table to check its weight . (✓)**Look**

يبدو

You are **looking** fantastic in that dress . (X)You **look** fantastic in that dress . (✓)

يترجم حسب حرف الجر اللي بعده

He is **looking** at the map to find the best route . (✓) (يبحث عن)**Appear**

له مظهر

She **appears** to be tired after the long journey.

يمثل في فيلم او مسرحية

She is **appearing** at the concert tonight.

She is performing at the concert tonight .

**Feel**

يعتقد

I **feel** that something is not right here.

يشعر ولكن لفترة قصيرة

I'm **feeling** a bit tired this afternoon.**Come**

دولته الأصلية nationality

I **come** from England

مسافر من دولة ليست بلده الام travelling

I **am coming** from England.**Do**

عمله / وظيفته Job

What **do** you **do**?

تفعل Action

What **are** you **doing**?**Enjoy**

بشكل دائم permanently

I **enjoy** short stories .

بشكل مؤقت Temporarily

I **am really enjoying** this story.**Consider**

يعتبر

I **consider** the plan to be a good opportunity for growth.

يفكر

I **am considering** spending my vacation in Europe this summer.

ملاحظة

يمكن استخدام بعض افعال المشاعر في المضارع البسيط و المضارع المستمر دون تغيير في المعنى ومنها :

ache**Feel****hurt****Look**You **Look** nice today's . (✓)you **are Looking** nice today . (✓)Do you **feel** ok today? . (✓)Are you **feeling** ok today? . (✓)

مع الافعال التي تصف الحواس يمكن استخدام الشكل البسيط او **can/could + inf**

لافطة

I **can** hear someone shouting for help.What is happenings?



EXERCISE ON GRAMMAR

- 1 I of a way to solve this complicated problem. Don't distract me.
 a think b thinking c am thinking d thinks
- 2 Now, he
 a look happily b looks happy
 c is looking happy d is looking at happily
- 3 This camera to Ahmed.
 a isn't belonging b belongs c is belonging d belong
- 4 My father always says that coffee good after a meal.
 a tasted b was tasted c is tasting d tastes
- 5 I 90 kilograms. I need to follow a diet.
 a weigh b am weighing
 c have been weighing d weighs
- 6 He's very pessimistic. He always the worst is going to happen.
 a is thinking b think c thinks d thinking
- 7 They they were better at maths.
 a wish b were wishing c are wishing d wishes
- 8 Most scientists that the world is getting hotter.
 a will believe b are believed c are believing d believe
- 9 At the moment, I can't buy this car. It too much money.
 a is costing b costs c cost d was costing
- 10 The English very rarely talk on the underground. They to read their newspapers.
 a prefers b are preferring c prefer d will prefer
- 11 He's stayed with us for a week but now, he to leave.
 a wants b want c is wanting d wanted
- 12 I a wonderful time here in this hotel. Everyone is really nice.
 a had b am having c going to have d had had
- 13 He that he will mend the door but he never does it.
 a says always b will always say
 c is always saying d was always saying
- 14 He very happy now.
 a is seeming b seem c seems d was seeming



- 15 Look! The officer the suitcase again.
 a weighs b weighed c is weighing d weight
- 16 I dinner at this moment.
 a have b am having c will have d have had
- 17 A: What are you doing, Samir? B: I off my uncle at the airport.
 a see b am seen c am seeing d be seeing
- 18 You haven't said a word all morning. What about?
 a you think b you are thinking c are you thinking d you do think
- 19 Ahmed that he was better at English.
 a wishes b is wishing c wished d will wish
- 20 I a little boy in the room. He is sleeping on the sofa.
 a am seeing b saw c can see d had seen
- 21 I woke up at midnight when I loud noise.
 a hear b am hearing c heard d was hearing
- 22 I to read novels during holidays; I prefer to read short stories instead.
 a am never liking b don't like c am not liking d like
- 23 He strange voices every now and then.
 a hears b is hearing c hear d is heard
- 24 Nobody the cause of earthquakes.
 a is knowing b knows c have known d was known
- 25 We are having lunch now. The verb 'have' here is a verb showing
 a command b sense c action d order
- 26 While Nadia in hospital, her friends used to visit her every day.
 a was being b being c was d were
- 27 Hala's little sister very helpful today. That's nice.
 a is being b isn't c were d being
- 49 My uncle as an engineer. It's his permanent job.
 a is working b work c had worked d works
- 50 Stress high blood pressure.
 a cause b causes c is causing d have caused
- 51 I'm going to make coffee. a cup?
 a Do you want b Are you wanting c Do you needs d Are you needing



52. Normally, you are very sensible. So, why silly about this matter?
 a are you being b you are being c do you d you are
54. I to read novels during holidays; I prefer to read short stories instead.
 a am not liking b don't like c am never liking d like
55. I haven't seen you for a long time. I you so much.
 a am missing b had missed c miss d was missing
57. Al Ahly will win tomorrow's match?
 a Are you thinking b Had you thought
 c Do you think d Were you thinking
58. Hatim wants to travel to China, but he enough Chinese.
 a doesn't know b isn't knowing c hadn't known d don't know
59. Which sentence of the following isn't structurally correct?
 a Look! The garden is being watered now.
 b Adel isn't liking to have spicy food.
 c We are getting ready for the party.
 d The journalist is having a speech with a film star at the moment.
60. He a large villa.
 a own b owns c owing d is owing
61. These flowers good.
 a smell b smells c are smelling d have smelt
62. This shirt you. Try another one.
 a is fitting b isn't fitting c fit d doesn't fit
63. Now, The chef the pasta to see if it is fully cooked.
 a taste b tasted c tasting d is tasting
64. I what I say! Do you hear me?
 a see b am seeing c had seen d am seen
65. Your performance on how much you practice.
 a depend b depends c is depending d is depended
66. The price of the meal the drinks.
 a include b is including c isn't including d includes



Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets to give the same meaning:

- 1 In my opinion, this plan is excellent. (think)
- 2 This expensive car belongs to my uncle. (owns)
- 3 The soup has a delicious taste. (tastes)
- 4 I am looking at the sunset right now. (see)
- 5 He has a resemblance to his grandfather. (resembles)
- 6 What is the weight of that suitcase? (weigh)
- 7 He is currently in the middle of eating his lunch. (having)
- 8 The flower has a wonderful smell. (smells)
- 9 The price of this shirt is 200 pounds. (costs)
- 10 I am currently considering a job offer in London. (thinking)
- 11 It is apparent that he is angry. (appears)
- 12 Usually he is a kind person, but he is acting cruelly today. (being)
- 13 I have an appointment with the dentist tomorrow. (seeing)
- 14 He is putting the baby on the scales to find her weight. (weighing)
- 15 Is this the correct size for you? (fit)
- 16 The famous actress is performing in a new movie this year. (appearing)
- 17 She has a strong resemblance to her grandmother. (looks)
- 18 The chef is checking the flavor of the sauce. (tasting)
- 19 This silk scarf has a very smooth texture. (feels)
- 20 We are experiencing a great time at the party. (having)
- 21 These documents are the property of the director. (belong)
- 22 He has a vast collection of rare stamps. (possesses)



Part Two : Lessons 3 & 4

KEY VOCABULARY

admiration (n.)	إعجاب	promote (v.)	يروج / يشجع / يرقى
admire (v.)	يعجب بـ	promotion (n.)	ترويج / ترقية
aware (adj.)	واع / مدرك	respect (v.) (n.)	يحترم / احترام
awareness (n.)	الوعي	respectable (adj.)	محترم

DEFINITIONS:

awareness	وعي	understanding or knowledge about an issue
admire	يعجب بـ	to appreciate or look at something with approval
respect	احترام	to honor or value someone's opinion
promote	يروج / يعزز	to encourage or support something

EXTRA VOCABULARY

absolutely	تماماً / بكل تأكيد	action	فعل / إجراء	alive	حي
bridge	جسر	concert	حفل موسيقي	deeply	بعمق
desert	صحراء	differently	بشكل مختلف	education	تعليم
matter	يهم / أمر	mind	عقل	moderator	منسق / مدير الحوار
perform	يقدم عرضاً	policy	سياسة	powerful	قوي
progress	تقدم	emotions	مشاعر / عواطف	remind	يذكر
return	يعود/عودة	revolution	ثورة	rhythm	إيقاع
express	يعبر	feelings	مشاعر	forum	منتدى
generation	جيل	heart	قلب	huge	ضخم
inspired	ملهم	language	لغة	law	قانون
seed	بذرة	society	مجتمع	song	أغنية
songwriter	كاتب أغاني	speaker	متحدث	speech	خطبة / خطاب



strongly	بقوة	thoughts	أفكار	touch	يلمس
wave	موجة	wonderful	رائع	youth	شباب

SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS

Word

Synonyms

Antonyms

admire

يعجب ب / يقدر

appreciate , praise

criticize , despise

ينتقد ، يحتقر

awareness

وعي / إدراك

consciousness , alertness

ignorance , neglect

جهل ، إهمال

inspire

يلهم

motivate , influence

discourage , depress

يحبط ، يثبط

progress

تقدم / تطور

development , growth

decline , failure

تراجع ، فشل

promote

يعزز / يشجع

encourage , advance

hinder , prevent

يعيق ، يمنع

respect

يحترم

honor , appreciate

disregard , ignore

يتجاهل ، يزدري

EXPRESSIONS AND PREPOSITIONS

environmental awareness

وعي بيئي

respect in return

احترام في المقابل

move on

يمضي قدماً

wave of change

موجة تغيير

cleanup days

أيام التنظيف

youth forum

منتدى الشباب

COLLOCATIONS

change behavior

يغير السلوك

plant seed

يزرع بذرة

change mind

يغير العقل

promote unity

يعزز الوحدة

change society

يغير المجتمع

raise awareness

يرفع الوعي

express feelings

يعبر عن المشاعر

reach every corner

يصل إلى كل زاوية

feel hope

يشعر بالأمل

reach millions

يصل إلى الملايين

feel inspired

يشعر بالإلهام

take action

يتخذ إجراء

open heart

يفتح القلب

touch emotions

يلمس المشاعر



LANGUAGE NOTES

promotion & advertisement**promotion**

ترويج أو ترقية (النشاط العام لتشجيع المبيعات أو الارتقاء الوظيفي)

advertisement

إعلان (الوسيلة الفعلية مثل ملصق أو فيديو ترويجي)

EX

The marketing team is planning a big **promotion** to increase sales this summer.

EX

I saw a very creative **advertisement** for the new smartphone on social media.

awareness & consciousness**awareness**

وعي / إدراك (معرفة حقيقة أو موقف معين)

consciousness

وعي / إدراك حسي (الحالة العقلية أو اليقظة والقدرة على الشعور)

EX

We need to raise **awareness** about the importance of mental health.

EX

The boxer lost **consciousness** for a few minutes after the heavy blow.

forum , symposium , seminar , conference & podium**forum**

مكان أو اجتماع للنقاش العام وتبادل الآراء

symposium

ندوة (اجتماع رسمي لمناقشة موضوع متخصص بواسطة خبراء)

seminar

حلقة دراسية (اجتماع لغرض تعليمي أو تدريبي في مجموعة صغيرة)

conference

مؤتمر (اجتماع رسمي كبير يضم العديد من الناس لعدة أيام)

podium

منصة إلقاء (الهيكل الخشبي أو القاعدة التي يقف خلفها المتحدث)

EX

The local **forum** was held to discuss the new park project.

EX

Scientists gathered at the **symposium** to discuss renewable energy.

EX

The professor organized a **seminar** for his postgraduate students.

EX

The company's annual **conference** was held in London this year.

EX

The president stood at the **podium** to address the nation.



READING

Can Art Change Society?

Moderator : Welcome to youth forum! Today we ask: can art change society? Our speakers are Nadia and Omar.

Nadia : I believe it absolutely can. Art touches emotions in ways that speeches and laws cannot. Think of the murals after the revolution or songs that **promote** unity. When people feel inspired, they act differently. Art opens the heart before it changes the mind.

Omar : I **respect** that, but I think change needs more than feelings. A painting can raise **awareness**, but only education and policies make real progress. People **admire** a mural for a week and then forget.

Nadia : But art keeps ideas alive! A film or a song can reach millions in one day. Isn't that powerful?

Omar : True, but not every listener takes action. Some just enjoy the music and move on.

Moderator : So, perhaps art plants the seed, and society must water it. Both emotion and action matter.

Nadia : Agreed – art begins the change.

Omar : And people must finish it.



The Language of Music

Today we're discussing how music can express feelings more strongly than words. Our guest, Hassen Kamel, is a young Egyptian songwriter who believes music can raise environmental awareness.

Hassen Kamel : Music is a 'bridge' – when I sing about the Nile or the desert, people feel the message deeply. One of my songs, 'River of Life,' shows that the Nile means more to us than just a river; it gives us life and expects **respect** in return.

Interviewer : Do you think songs can really change behavior?

Hassen Kamel : I truly believe they can. When students hear a message carried by rhythm, they remember it. We performed in schools across Fayoum and Alexandria, and after the concerts, students seemed **inspired**. They began organizing cleanup days.

Interviewer : That's wonderful! What do you want your listeners to feel?

Hassen Kamel : I want them to feel hope. Our generation now faces huge challenges, but music reminds them that 'one clear voice can begin a wave of change.'

Interviewer : Beautiful thoughts! Thank you, Hassen. I hope your next song reaches every corner of Egypt.





KEY VOCABULARY & DEFINITIONS

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My brother was very happy when he finally received a/an at the bank.
 (a) devotion (b) promotion (c) emotion (d) revolution
2. The students looked at the hero with great for his brave actions.
 (a) progress (b) education (c) admiration (d) generation
3. The company decided to its new product through social media influencers.
 (a) express (b) remind (c) return (d) promote
4. We must raise public regarding the importance of recycling plastic.
 (a) forum (b) society (c) awareness (d) language
5. Are you that the deadline for the project has been moved to Friday?
 (a) aware (b) huge (c) alive (d) powerful
6. It is important to show for other people's traditions and beliefs.
 (a) rhythm (b) heart (c) respect (d) speech
7. He holds a position in the government as a senior advisor.
 (a) inspired (b) respectable (c) wonderful (d) alive
8. Many young athletes the champion for his hard work and discipline.
 (a) matter (b) touch (c) perform (d) admire
9. Hard work and dedication led to her to manager last month.
 (a) promotion (b) concert (c) seed (d) wave
10. After watching the documentary, I felt to start my own garden.
 (a) inspiring (b) respectful (c) inspired (d) aware

EXTRA VOCABULARY

11. After the accident, the doctors were happy to find that the patient was still
 (a) huge (b) wonderful (c) powerful (d) alive
12. The government plans to build a new over the river to reduce traffic.
 (a) bridge (b) desert (c) forum (d) heart
13. I am certain that we will finish the task before the sun sets.
 (a) deeply (b) absolutely (c) differently (d) strongly
14. We bought tickets to attend a live music in the park this evening.
 (a) youth (b) law (c) concert (d) seed



- 15 Quality is the best tool for young people to build a better future.
 a education b revolution c generation d compassion
- 16 It doesn't how many times you fail, as long as you keep trying.
 a perform b express c return d matter
- 17 Reading books can help you change your and learn new ways of thinking.
 a heart b law c mind d brain
- 18 The famous pianist is going to at the national theater tonight.
 a remember b perform c reform d form
- 19 The school has a strict against bullying to protect all students.
 a forum b speech c politics d policy
- 20 Scientists are making great in finding a cure for the disease.
 a progress b action c thought d rhythm
- 21 It is sometimes difficult for teenagers to control their during stress.
 a seeds b laws c emotions d forums
- 22 Please me to buy some milk on our way back home tonight.
 a express b remind c admire d matter
- 23 The digital has completely changed how we communicate today.
 a revolution b generation c moderator d education
- 24 The drummer kept a steady that made everyone want to dance.
 a wave b rhyme c speech d rhythm
- 25 Art is a beautiful way for people to their inner thoughts.
 a address b express c progress d depress
- 26 The online allows experts to discuss new ideas with the public.
 a forum b law c youth d podium
- 27 The older has a lot of wisdom to share with young people.
 a progress b society c generation d language
- 28 The earthquake caused damage to the buildings in the city center.
 a aware b alive c wonderful d huge
- 29 Learning a second can help you understand different cultures.
 a language b policy c rhythm d revolution
- 30 Everyone must follow the to ensure safety and order in society.
 a heart b mind c speech d law
- 31 We all have a responsibility to contribute to the well-being of our
 a progress b society c education d generation



32. The president delivered a moving during the national holiday.
 a) policy b) law c) speech d) rhythm
33. It is helpful to write down your in a journal every day to help you to be a writer one day.
 a) feelings b) emotions c) doubts d) thoughts
34. The sad movie was so realistic that it managed to my heart.
 a) attack b) touch c) perform d) arrive
35. A giant crashed against the shore during the heavy storm.
 a) seed b) heart c) bridge d) wave
36. We had a time at the beach with our friends last summer.
 a) wonderful b) respectable c) huge d) powerful
37. The of today are the leaders and innovators of tomorrow.
 a) forum b) society c) youth d) generation
38. The government must take immediate to solve the traffic problem.
 a) thought b) action c) speech d) mind
39. I agree with your opinion regarding the importance of environmental protection.
 a) absolutely b) no longer c) afterward d) once

PREPOSITIONS, COLLOCATIONS AND PHRASES

40. The charity organises events to awareness about the dangers of smoking.
 a) lift b) raise c) drop d) lower
41. If we want to stop the pollution in our lake, we must action immediately.
 a) do b) make c) find d) take
42. Young leaders from all over the world gathered at the youth to share ideas.
 a) club b) team c) forum d) house
43. Even though he failed the first time, he decided to on and try again.
 a) move b) sit c) stay d) stop
44. The singer's voice was so beautiful that it managed to the emotions of everyone.
 a) hit b) break c) touch d) catch
45. After hearing the success story of the young inventor, the children felt very
 a) tired b) bored c) sleepy d) inspired
46. Our school holds weekly days to ensure the playground remains litter-free.
 a) work b) cleanup c) build d) play
47. If you a seed of kindness today, you will see it grow in the future.
 a) plant b) cut c) hide d) throw



48 Scientists are working hard to the behavior of people toward energy use.

- a hold b keep c stop d change

49 The news of the discovery managed to millions of people within an hour.

- a see b reach c hear d meet

50 If you show kindness to others, you will usually receive respect in

- a back b side c return d front

SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS

49 There is a growing awareness among people about the importance of recycling.
The synonyms for 'awareness' are:

- a ignorance b consciousness c neglect d alertness e disregard

49 I truly admire her for the way she handles difficult situations with such grace.
The antonyms for 'admire' are:

- a praise b criticize c appreciate d cherish e despise

49 You should always respect the opinions of others, even if you disagree.
The synonyms for 'respect' are:

- a honor b ignore c appreciate d neglect e disregard

49 Teachers often inspire their students to discover their hidden talents.
The synonyms for 'inspire' are:

- a discourage b motivate c depress d influence e dissuade

49 The government is trying to promote new laws to protect the environment.
The antonyms for 'promote' are:

- a encourage b advance c hinder d nurture e prevent

49 Scientists have made significant progress in finding a cure for the disease.
The synonyms for 'progress' are:

- a decline b development c failure d growth e halt

WRITING SKILLS

An Opinion Essay

Writing An Opinion Paragraph

Start with a clear topic sentence: State your opinion in the very first sentence.

ابدأ بجملة موضوع واضحة: صرح برأيك في الجملة الأولى تماماً.

Give at least two strong reasons: Support your opinion with logical explanations.

اذكر سببين قويين على الأقل: ادعم رأيك بتفسيرات منطقية.



Add evidence or examples: Give a real event, a personal experience, or something you've seen or read.

أضف أدلة أو أمثلة: اذكر حدثاً حقيقياً، تجربة شخصية، أو شيئاً رأيته أو قرأته.

Keep your opinion consistent: Don't switch sides. Make sure all sentences support your point of view.

حافظ على ثبات رأيك: لا تغير موقفك. تأكد من أن جميع الجمل تدعم وجهة نظرك.

Use a strong concluding sentence: End with a sentence that restates your opinion in a new way.

استخدم جملة ختامية قوية: اختتم بجملة تعيد صياغة رأيك بطريقة جديدة.

Linking Phrases: Use "because," "since," and "for example."

عبارات الربط: استخدم "بسبب"، "بما أن"، و "على سبيل المثال".

Example: "I believe community art can inspire people to act."

مثال: "أعتقد أن فن المجتمع يمكن أن يلهم الناس للعمل."

Example Conclusion: "For these reasons, art clearly has the power to change society."

خاتمة مثال: "لهذه الأسباب، من الواضح أن الفن لديه القدرة على تغيير المجتمع."

EXERCISES ON WRITING SKILLS

1. In an opinion paragraph, where should you state your main opinion?
 - a) Only at the end
 - b) In the very first sentence
 - c) In a secret code
 - d) Not at all
2. What can you add to your paragraph to make your reasons feel "real"?
 - a) A funny joke
 - b) Many exclamation marks
 - c) Evidence or personal experiences
 - d) A picture of a cat
3. The last sentence of your paragraph should your opinion in a new way.
 - a) forget
 - b) hide
 - c) restate
 - d) delete
4. When you support your opinion, your explanations must be
 - a) confusing
 - b) magical
 - c) very loud
 - d) logical
5. The phrase "I believe..." is a perfect way to
 - a) end a story
 - b) start a topic sentence
 - c) ask for a favor
 - d) count numbers
6. Being "consistent" in your writing means that you should
 - a) change your mind
 - b) use very long words
 - c) write in circles
 - d) not switch sides
7. If a writer says "I like art" but then says "Art is bad," they are not
 - a) hungry
 - b) fast
 - c) tired
 - d) consistent



- 8 We use the phrase "For example" to introduce
 a evidence or a real event b a goodbye
 c a title d a name
- 9 To be convincing, you should provide logic.
 a confusing b magical c strong and clear d hidden
- 10 "I believe community art inspires people" is an example of a
 a closing b detail c question d topic sentence
- 11 The concluding sentence should restate the opinion using
 a the exact same words b different words
 c a whisper d a code
- 12 An opinion paragraph is about your on a specific topic.
 a age b height c personal perspective d bank account
- 13 A strong conclusion often begins with
 a "Once upon a time" b "For these reasons"
 c "I am happy" d "The end"

SKILLS CORNER

Read the passage , then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Long ago, in the days before lions were known in Europe, the bear was considered 'the king of beasts.' Many knights put pictures of bears on their shields. They hoped the bears would make them look big and strong to the enemy.

Today, people still admire bears for their size and strength. In North America, the two most common species of bears are the black bear and the brown bear. These two species have much in common, but there are differences between them. Black bears are smaller than brown bears, for example. They are also more likely to climb trees. The brown bear has a shoulder hump and a curved snout. The snout of a black bear is straighter.

Bears belong to the same family of animals as dogs and foxes. They are also like people in one interesting way. They walk flat-footed, as people do. Most other mammals walk on their toes. When the weather gets cold, bears hide in a cave or other warm spot and sleep for the winter. Baby bears are born in early spring.

Bears eat both plants and meat, including nuts, berries, roots, fish, squirrels, and other small animals. Bears live alone, except for mothers taking care of their cubs. They do not form groups. For the most part, bears are peaceful. They would rather walk away than fight.

- 1 Which sentence states the main idea of this passage?
 a Bears were known in Europe long ago. b Lions were known in Europe long ago.
 c Bears live alone d There are only two species of bears



2 The knights put pictures of bears on their shields to show their

- a love for bears b skills how to hunt bears
c loyalty for the country d strength to frighten their enemy

3 How are brown bears and black bears different?

- a The black bear has a shoulder hump. b The brown bear has a curved snout.
c The snout of a brown bear is straighter. d Black bears are bigger than brown bears.

4 In what way are bears like people?

- a They walk on their toes. b They sleep in winter.
c They walk flat-footed. d They have tails.

5 Baby bears are born in

- a early spring b early summer c late spring d late summer

6 Bears would rather walk away than fight. This means they are

- a courageous b peaceful c frightened d in danger

7 The underlined word means

- a a place b a cave c a mountain d an ocean

TRANSLATION

Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 **Famine, poverty, wars and social problems may lead some children to end up living in the streets struggling to survive.**

- a المجاعة و الفقر و الفيضان و المشاكل الاجتماعية ممكن تؤدي الى ان الاطفال تعيش فى الشوارع تصارع من أجل البقاء.
b البلطجة و الفقر و الحروب و المشاكل الاجتماعية ممكن تؤدي الى ان الاطفال تعيش فى الشوارع تصارع من أجل البقاء.
c البلطجة و الفقر و الحروب و المشاكل الاجتماعية ممكن تؤدي الى ان الاطفال تعيش فى الأرياف تصارع من أجل البقاء.
d المجاعة و الفقر و الحروب و المشاكل الاجتماعية ممكن تؤدي الى ان الاطفال تعيش فى الشوارع تصارع من أجل البقاء.

2 **The development of industry and agriculture is our only hope to increase the national income and raise the standard of living for all members of society.**

- a إن تطوير الصناعة والزراعة هو أملنا الوحيد لزيادة الدخل القومي ورفع مستوى المعيشة لكل أفراد المجتمع.
b إن تطوير الصناعة والتجارة هو أملنا الوحيد لزيادة الدخل القومي ورفع مستوى المعيشة لكل أفراد المجتمع.
c إن تطوير الصناعة والزراعة هو أملنا الوحيد لزيادة الدخل الدولي ورفع مستوى المعيشة لكل أفراد المجتمع.
d إن تطوير الصناعة والزراعة هو أملنا الوحيد لزيادة الدخل الدولي ورفع مستوى التعليم لكل أفراد المجتمع.



Choose the correct English translation:

Shaimaa Farghally

يجب أن تكون طموحاً و متفائلاً. فبالعمل الجاد و الإصرار ممكن ان تحقق كل الأهداف المطلوبة .

3

- a) You should be ambitious and optimistic. Throw hard work and insistence, you can achieve all the aims wanted.
- b) You should be ambition and optimistic. Through hard work and insistence, you can achieve all the aims wanted.
- c) You should be ambitious and optimism. Through hard work and insistence, you can achieve all the aims wanted.
- d) You should be ambitious and optimistic. Through hard work and insistence, you can achieve all the aims wanted.

إن بلدنا في حاجة إلى مواطنين يعملون أكثر مما يتكلمون. فالعمل الجاد هو السبيل الوحيد للتغلب على مشاكلنا الاقتصادية والاجتماعية ورفع مستوى المعيشة.

4

- a) Our country needs citizens who work more than talk. Hardly work is the only way to overcome our economical and social problems and raise the standard of living.
- b) Our country needs citizens who work less than talk. Hard work is the only way to overcome our economic and sociable problems and improve the standard of living.
- c) Our country needs citizens who work more then talk. Hard work is the way to overcome our economic and social problems and increase the standard of living.
- d) Our country needs citizens who work more than talk. Hard work is the only way to overcome our economic and social problems and raise the standard of living.



TEST ON UNIT 9

A.Vocabulary and Structures (14 Marks)

1 Choose the Two (2) correct answers out of the Five (5) options given: (2 Marks)

1 Although the stars are invisible during the day, they are still there. The synonym of invisible is

- a) apparent b) concealed c) obvious d) hidden e) visible

2 We show compassion towards the homeless and the needy. The antonym of compassion is

- a) cruelty b) sympathy c) indifference d) empathy e) kindness

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (12 Marks)

1 Her kindness and understanding showed that she was a very person.

- a) aware b) inspired c) traditional d) compassionate

2 The teacher's passion for history was to all her students.

- a) invisible b) aware c) inspiring d) traditional

3 He gave a small with his hand, signaling for us to wait.

- a) gesture b) echo c) admiration d) promotion

4 The children helped firewood for the campfire.

- a) admire b) promote c) gather d) respect

5 The sound of the bell would through the empty valley.

- a) gather b) gesture c) echo d) inspire

6 To be of the risks is the first step in avoiding them.

- a) aware b) inspired c) invisible d) traditional

7 To make an opinion paragraph more persuasive, a writer should include

- a) a list of vocabulary b) a neutral summary
c) evidence or examples d) other people's names

8 A strong concluding sentence should

- a) ask a question b) restate your opinion
c) introduce a new idea d) list the distractors

9 I a great time in Sydney. It's great fun.

- a) am having b) have c) had d) has had

10 I about going to the beach afterwards.

- a) think b) am thought c) am thinking d) thinks



- 11 Hala's little sister very helpful today. That's nice!
- a is b was c is being d has been

- 12 the capital city of Spain?

- a Are you known b Do you know
c Are you know d Are you knowing

B. Reading (7 Marks)

3 Read the following passage, then answer the question:

All around the world, buildings are going green! What does it mean to go green or to make a green building? A green building is designed in a way that is **kinder** to the environment. This building uses energy, water and other resources in ways that cause no pollution.

In the first step of making a green building design, the architect must think about the three most important features. These are the use of energy, water and materials. The architect plans how to use materials, energy, and space in a way that will be good for the environment.

There are many ways to save energy in green buildings. They are designed to minimize energy losses. Most of the energy is produced through sustainable sources such as solar energy or wind energy. That's why architects design buildings using natural light. Buildings can also be made with solar or wind power to get energy from the sun or wind.

To save water, **they** can have areas on the roofs to collect rainwater. Bathrooms and kitchens can have sinks and toilets that conserve water. As for the materials used to construct green buildings, it is important to use materials that do not have chemicals that are harmful to the air or water. Recycled materials can also be used for building. Green buildings are making the world a better place to live in!

- 1 We can know from the passage that natural light is used in green buildings to

- a recue electricity usage b be used instead of toilets
c prevent wasting water d colour buildings green

- 2 The sun can provide green house with energy.

- a non-renewable but clean b renewable and green
c heavy pollution d fossil fuel

- 3 What does the colour green mean to the environment ?

- a A healthy and clean environment b A place we can't live in
c There is more pollution d We are near the countryside



4 Which of the following best states the main idea of the passage?

- a Green buildings are extremely high
- b Green buildings are all over the world
- c Green buildings keep the environment clean
- d Green buildings cause pollution

5 The word "kinder" means to the environment.

- a harmful
- b harmless
- c damaging
- d destructive

6 Where do you think remote tourist villages get electricity from?

- a desert power
- b horse power
- c rain power
- d wind power

7 The underlined pronoun "they" refer to

- a natural light
- b the sun and the wind
- c green buildings
- d bathrooms

C. Translation (4 Marks)

4 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation: [2 marks]

1 Life has become fast and modern lifestyle has made people addicted to fast foods. Fast foods have side effects like obesity and sleep disorders.

- a لقد أصبحت الحياة سريعة وأسلوب المعيشة الحديث جعل الناس مدمنين للوجبات السريعة . فلهذه الوجبات السريعة العديد من الآثار الجانبية مثل السمنة والأضرار عن النوم .
- b لقد أصبحت الحياة سريعة وأسلوب المعيشة الحديث جعل الناس مدمنين للوجبات السريعة . فلهذه الوجبات السريعة العديد من الآثار الجانبية مثل السمنة واضطرابات النوم .
- c لقد أصبحت الحياة سريعة وأسلوب المعيشة الحديث جعل الناس مدمنين للوجبات السريعة . فلهذه الوجبات السريعة العديد من الآثار الجانبية مثل السمنة واضطرابات النوم .
- d لقد أصبحت الحياة سريعة وأسلوب المعيشة الحديث جعل الناس مدمنين للوجبات السريعة . فلهذه الوجبات السريعة العديد من الآثار الجانبية مثل السمنة واضطرابات النوم .

4 B) Choose the correct English translation: [2 marks]

1 العمل الجماعي جزء أساسي للنجاح في مكان العمل . فالعمل الجماعي الناجم يعتمد بشكل أساسي على التعاون بين كل أعضاء الفريق لتحقيق مهام محددة .

- a Teamwork an essential part of workplace success. Successful teamwork relies mainly on cooperation among all team members to carry out certain tasks.
- b Teamwork is an essential part of workplace success. Successful teamwork relies mainly on cooperation among all team remembers to carry out certain tasks.
- c Teamwork is an essential part of workplace success. Successful teamwork relies mainly on cooperation among all team members to carry out certain tasks.
- d Teamwork is an essential port of workplace success. Successful teamwork relies mainly on cooperation among all team members to carry out certain tasks.



D. Novel (1 marks)

5 Answer the following questions:

- 1 Explain why Detective Fix decided to aid Fogg in speeding up the journey across the Pacific.
.....
- 2 How does Fix's change of strategy reflect irony?
.....

E. Writing

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets to give the same meaning: (1 mark)

- 1 I have an official appointment to meet the plastic surgeon on Wednesday. (seeing)
- 2 In my opinion, your brother is acting very strangely today. (being)

7 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following topic : (3 marks)

Art is a universal language: What is the importance of art in our lives?



Review 3

Based On Units 7, 8 & 9

A. Vocabulary and Structures

Choose the Two (2) correct answers out of the Five (5) options given:

- 1 "Inclusive communities help everyone feel valued." The antonym of valued is
 a respected b appreciated c hated d worthless e important
- 2 "Students should show fairness during group activities." The opposite of fairness is
 a treating people equally b winning every time
 c injustice d honesty
 e unfairness
- 3 "Volunteers helped resolve the conflict peacefully." The synonym of resolve is
 a solve b settle c create d ignore e worsen
- 4 "Art can express feelings without words." The meaning of express is
 a show b communicate c hide d cover e silence
- 5 "The artist's work had a powerful impact on the audience." The synonym of impact is
 a effect. b influence c accident d delay e decoration

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 6 An inclusive community makes people feel
 a excluded b ignored c welcome d confused
- 7 A person who helps solve problems between others is a/an
 a mediator b competitor c resident d audience
- 8 Public art can help people important social issues.
 a forget b ignore c discuss d hide
- 9 Volunteers often help improve their
 a community b routine c schedule d argument
- 10 Writing thank-you notes is a way to show
 a gratitude b punishment c routine d habit
- 11 Small acts of kindness can have a positive on others.
 a impact b delay c accident d mistake



12. Inclusive playgrounds encourage students to with each other.
 a cooperate b compete c complain d argue
13. Conflicts often happen because of
 a agreement b misunderstanding c cooperation d fairness

B. Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

14. If people treat each other with respect, communities stronger.
 a become b became c will become d would become
15. Students work together to achieve common goals.
 a must b shouldn't c can't d don't have to
16. If he read the newspaper, he all the current news.
 a would know b will know c knows d 'd have known
17. He had to come early because it necessary.
 a is b was c will be d had
18. Most scientists that the world is getting hotter.
 a believes b are believing c believe d has believed
19. I a little boy in the room. He is sleeping on the sofa.
 a am seeing b saw c can see d had seen
20. Students respect others to build a caring community.
 a must b shouldn't c can't d don't have to
21. If everyone follows the rules, activities fair.
 a will remain b remained c would remain d had remained

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets to give the same meaning:

22. Amal doesn't own this tablet. (belong)

23. You have to follow the rules, otherwise you will be punished. (If)

24. You needn't finish the report today. (been)

25. He doesn't help others, so people don't trust him. (If)



C. Translation

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

26 An inclusive community makes everyone feel valued and respected. People are more willing to cooperate when they feel they belong.

- a المجتمع الشامل يجعل الجميع يشعرون بالتقدير والاحترام، ويكون الناس أكثر استعدادًا للتعاون عندما يشعرون بالانتماء.
- b المجتمع الشامل يتجاهل الأفراد ويجعلهم يرفضون التعاون. ويكون الناس أكثر استعدادًا للتعاون عندما يشعرون بالملكية.
- c المجتمع الشامل يمنع الناس من العمل معًا. ويكون الناس أقل استعدادًا للتعاون عندما لا يشعرون بالانتماء.
- d المجتمع الشامل يسبب الخلافات بين أفرادها، ويكون الناس أكثر استعدادًا للتعاون عندما يشعرون بالانتماء.

27 Students should feel fairness by taking part in different activities. This helps prevent conflicts and arguments.

- a يجب أن يُظهر الطلاب العدل من خلال تجاهل القواعد، مما يسبب النزاعات والصراعات أثناء ممارسة الأنشطة المختلفة.
- b يجب أن يشعر الطلاب بالعدل عن طريق المشاركة أثناء الأنشطة المختلفة، مما يساعد على منع الخلافات والمشاجرات.
- c يُظهر الطلاب العدل بالمنافسة القوية فقط أثناء الأنشطة المختلفة، مما يساعد على منع الخلافات والمشاجرات.
- d يُظهر الطلاب العدل برفض المشاركة في الأنشطة المختلفة، مما يساعد على حدوث الخلافات والمشاجرات.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

28 تلعب الفنون بكافة أنواعها دورًا مهمًا في التعبير عن قضايا المجتمع، كما تساعدنا على الحفاظ على هويتنا الثقافية على مر الزمان.

- a All kinds of art play a significant rule in expressing society issues and help us maintain our cultural identity across generators.
- b All kinds of art play a significant rule in explaining societal cases and help us maintain our agricultural identical across generations.
- c All forms of art play a significant role in expressing society issues and help us maintain our agricultural identity across generators.
- d All forms of art play a significant role in expressing societal issues and help us maintain our cultural identity across generations.



يلعب التعليم دوراً حيوياً في بناء أفراد مسؤولين، كما يساعد المجتمعات على تحقيق التقدم والتنمية المستدامة مع مرور الوقت.

29

- a Education plays a vital role in building responsible individuals, and it also helps societies achieve progress and sustainable development over time.
- b Education plays a vital role in building responsible individuals, and it also helps societies do progress and sustain development over time.
- c Education plays a trivial role in building reasonable individuals, and it also helps societies achieve progress and sustainable development across time.
- d Education plays a trivial rule in building reasonable individuals, and it also helps societies achieve progressive and sustainable development across time.

D. READING COMPREHENSION

Read the following passage, then answer the question:

Healthy habits play an essential role in maintaining both physical and mental well-being. In today's fast-paced world, many people rely on fast food, spend long hours on screens, and neglect regular exercise. These behaviors may seem convenient, but they can lead to serious health problems in the long run. For this reason, developing healthy habits from an early age is extremely important. One of the most important healthy habits is eating a balanced diet. Consuming fruits, vegetables, whole grains, and enough water helps the body function properly and boosts energy levels. Regular physical activity is equally important, as it strengthens the heart, improves fitness, and reduces stress. In addition, getting enough sleep allows the body and mind to rest and recover, which improves concentration and academic performance. Healthy habits also have a positive effect on mental health. Exercise and proper nutrition can reduce anxiety and improve mood. Moreover, managing time wisely and avoiding bad habits such as smoking or excessive screen use help individuals feel more organized and confident. In conclusion, healthy habits are not only about avoiding illness; they are a lifestyle that supports success, happiness, and productivity. By making small but consistent healthy choices, individuals can enjoy a better quality of life and a healthier future.

30 Exercise and can reduce anxiety.

- a fast food
- b nourishment
- c sleeping late
- d maintaining

31 One unhealthy habit mentioned in the text is

- a drinking water
- b eating vegetables
- c spending long hours on screens
- d sleeping early

32 A balanced diet helps the body

- a feel tired
- b work properly
- c gain weight quickly
- d avoid learning

33 Regular exercise helps reduce

- a concentration
- b energy
- c stress
- d responsibility

34 Regular exercise helps reduce

- a concentration
- b energy
- c stress
- d responsibility



35 Getting enough sleep improves

- a laziness b illness c concentration d screen time

36 Healthy habits also improve

- a mental health b bad behavior c boredom d forgetfulness

37 The writer believes healthy habits

- a are difficult to follow b are only for adults
c support success and happiness d waste time

E. WRITING

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

38 In a problem-solution paragraph, the first step is to

- a give personal opinions b introduce the problem clearly
c list many solutions d end with a conclusion

39 What helps a poster look organized and easy to read?

- a No spaces at all b Bullet points and clear spacing
c Many different fonts in one line d Very small writing

40 Which linking word is best used to show a result in problem-solution writing?

- a because b although c as a result d meanwhile

41 When designing a campaign poster, the writer should

- a use long paragraphs with many details
b focus on a clear message and a strong call to action
c avoid using colors and images
d include unrelated information

Write about (120-150) words on one of the following :

42 Write a problem-solution paragraph (150-120 words) about "Littering in public places"

F. THE NOVEL

Answer the following questions :

43 Why do you think Phileas Fogg stayed calm during the arrest instead of arguing?

.....

44 In your opinion, why did Phileas Fogg stay calm despite losing time?

.....

45 Why was the whale incident especially stressful for Fix

.....

Da7ee-7Englizzy

في
اللة الانجليزية

Unit 10 Find Your Passion!



Mrs.

Shaimaa Farghally

انجليزي بقعد في الدماغ



Part One: Lessons 1 & 2

KEY VOCABULARY

Farghally

overwhelmed(adj)	مُرْهَق / غارق في الضغوط	balance (n)	توازن
encouraged(adj)	مُشَجَّع	balanced (adj)	متوازن
encouragement (n)	تشجيع / دعم	overwhelm (v)	يُرْهَق / يغطي على
growth (n)	نمو / تطوّر	overwhelming (adj)	ساحق / شديد
grow (v)	ينمو / يكبر	guarantees (n)	ضمانات

DEFINITIONS:

overwhelmed	مُرْهَق / غارق في الضغوط	unable to cope because of too much pressure
encouraged	مُشَجَّع	advised strongly and positively
balance	توازن	a healthy emotional state
growth	نمو / تطوّر	improving as a person

EXTRA VOCABULARY

guess (v/n)	يُخَمِّن / تخمين	entered (v)	دخل	grade (n)	درجة / صف دراسي
realized (v)	أدرك / فهم	intense (adj)	شديد / مكثف	deadlines (n)	مواعيد نهائية
sessions (n)	جلسات / حصص	join (v)	ينضمّ	workshop (n)	ورشة عمل
struggle (v)(n)	يكافح / كفاح	shape (n/v)	شكل / يشكّل	control (n/v)	تحكّم / يتحكّم
relaxed (adj)	مسترخ / هادئ	focus (n/v)	تركيز / يركّز	bowls (n)	أوعية / صحنون
identity (n)	هويّة	creativity (n)	إبداع	talented (adj)	موهوب
task (n)	مهمّة	ignore (v)	يتجاهل	musicians (n)	موسيقيّون
patience (n)	صبر	revision (n)	مراجعة	pressure (n)	ضغط
develop (v)	يطوّر / ينمي	spending (n)	إنفاق / صرف	possibly (adv)	من المحتمل
try (v)(n)	يحاول / محاولة	clay (n)	طين	supposed to	من المفترض أن
instructor (n)	مدرّب / مُعلّم	creating (v)	خلق / إنشاء	stress (n)	توتر / إجهاد
task (n)	مهمّة	remind (v)	يذكّر	patience (n)	صبر
entirely (adv)	تماماً / كليّاً	joy(n.)	سعادة	dull (adj)	ممل



reduce (v)	يقلل	require (v)	يتطلب	pressure (n)	ضغط
schoolwork (n)	واجبات مدرسية	disconnect (v/n)	ينفصل / انفصال		
discouraged (adj)	محبط	frequently (adv)	كثيراً / بشكل متكرر		
challenges (n)	تحديات	photography (n)	تصوير ضوئي		
guarantee (v)	يضمن	daily (adj.)(adv.)	يوميًا / يومي		
play the ukulele	يعزف علي القيثارة	unnecessary (adj)	غير ضروري		
weekend (n)	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	ceramic art (n phr.)	فن السيراميك / الفخار		
unexpected (adj)	غير متوقع	professional (adj/n)	محترف / مهني		
emotional (adj)	عاطفي	interrupted (v)	قاطع / قطع الحديث		
improving (v)	يتحسن / يتحسن	originally (adv)	أصلاً / في الأصل		

SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS

Word

encouraged

مُشجّع

overwhelmed

فرهق - مُثقل / مُحمّل فوق الطاقة

balance

توازن

growth

نمو / تطوّر

patience

صبر تحمّل

talented

موهوب

Synonyms

motivated - inspired - supported

overloaded - intense - overcome

stability - harmony equilibrium

development - expansion - progress

tolerance - endurance - calmness

gifted - skilled - brilliant - expert

Antonyms

discouraged- disheartened
مُحبطrelaxed - calm
مُرتاحimbalance - instability
اختلال - عدم توازنdecline - slowdown deterioration
تراجعimpatience - intolerance
نفاد الصبرuntalented - unskilled, incompetent
غير موهوب

**creativity**

إبداع

imagination - originality
innovation - inspiration -
visionimitation - unoriginality-
unimaginativeness

تقليد

small

صغير

tiny little - slight -
modestlarge - big - huge -
massive

كبير

EXPRESSIONS, COLLOCATIONS AND PREPOSITIONS

filled with

مليء بـ

come from

يأتي من / ينحدر من

at first

في البداية

By the end of

بحلول نهاية

spending time on

قضاء الوقت في / على

are only for

مخصصة فقط لـ

decided to

قرر أن

deal with

يتعامل مع

supposed to

من المفترض أن

benefit of

فائدة

disconnect from

ينفصل عن / يبتعد عن

One way to ... is to ...

إحدى الطرق لـ هي أن

focus on

يركز على

I agree because ...

أوافق لأن

I understand your point , but ...

أفهم وجهة نظرك، ولكن

LANGUAGE NOTES

Work & Job & Career & Profession

Profession

مهنة أو عمل يتطلب قدرا كبيرا من التدريب والتعليم مثل الطب والمحاماة والتدريس

EX

He left the teaching profession to set up his own business.

Work

العمل بصفة عامة ولا تجمع

EX

Peter's work involves a lot of travelling.

Job

وظيفة (تجمع) وتشير إلي عمل منتظم يقوم به الشخص لكسب المال

EX

When she left college, she got a job as a secretary.

EX

She has applied for a job

Career

العمل الذي يمارسه الشخص طوال حياته الوظيفية ويمكن أن يحصل فيه علي ترقيات

EX

Building a successful career requires dedication and continuous learning.



spend + مفعول + ing

يقضي

EX He spent the night watching a violent film.

spend ----- on

ينفق

EX She spent a lot of money on clothes.

READING

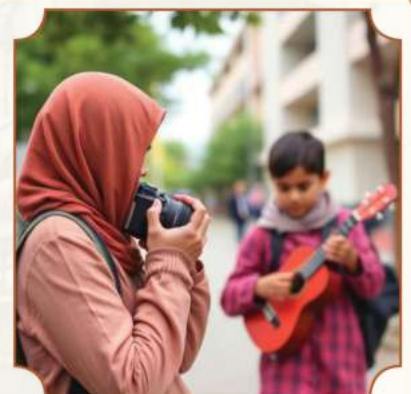
A Personal Experience

When I entered Grade 1 ,11 realized that schoolwork had become more **intense** than ever. My days were filled with **deadlines**, revision **sessions**, and exam **pressure**. One afternoon, after feeling unusually **overwhelmed**, my older cousin advised me to develop a hobby. At first, I thought the idea was **unnecessary**. How could spending time on a hobby possibly help when I had so much to study? However, a week later, I decided to give it a try and joined a small weekend **workshop** on ceramic art. On the first day, I **struggled**. The clay was **supposed to** be easy to shape, yet my hands couldn't control it. Still, as the instructor encouraged me to continue, I began to notice something unexpected: my mind slowly relaxed. Creating something with my hands allowed me to **disconnect** from **stress** and focus on one simple task. By the end of the month, I had not only made a few **bowls** but also discovered that having a hobby gives you balance. It reminds you that your **identity** is more than **grades**, and that personal growth can come from patience, creativity, and learning something entirely new.



LISTENING

"Last month, our teacher asked us to try a **new hobby** for one week. I chose **photography** because it always seemed to be fun, even though I didn't know much about it. At first, I was supposed to take pictures of nature around my school. But the weather was **cloudy and dull**, so instead I focused on taking photos of **daily life**, students walking, teachers preparing lessons, and workers cleaning the schoolyard. My friend Salma tried **baking**. She said it was meant to be easy, but she quickly learned that baking needs **patience and careful measuring**. Still, her cookies were delicious. Another student, Omar, learned to play the **ukulele**. He said he seemed to improve a little everyday. By the end of the week, we all agreed that trying new hobbies helps us learn something new about our selves. Some hobbies are meant to **challenge us** while others are supposed to bring us **joy**."





KEY VOCABULARY

Shaimaa Farghally

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 After taking care of many tasks at home and school without any help, she felt very by the end of the day.
 (a) underwhelmed (b) overwhelmed (c) whelmed (d) welcomed
- 2 When the coach spoke kindly and praised the team for their effort, the players felt and ready to try again.
 (a) discouraged (b) encouraged (c) undamaged (d) unmassaged
- 3 Hearing supportive words from her family gave her the she needed to continue studying.
 (a) discouragement (b) encouragement (c) management (d) arrangement
- 4 Thanks to new schools and hospitals, the of the town improved the lives of many people.
 (a) warmth (b) width (c) growth (d) mouth
- 5 If children eat healthy food and get enough sleep, they will stronger and healthier.
 (a) glow (b) grow (c) throw (d) flow
- 6 To live a healthy life, people should keep a good between work, rest, and free time.
 (a) guidance (b) guarantee (c) balance (d) reliance
- 7 Eating different kinds of food every day helps you have a diet and stay active.
 (a) unbalanced (b) balanced (c) misbalanced (d) encouraged
- 8 The number of exams in one week was so that many students felt tired and stressed.
 (a) encouraging (b) welcoming (c) underwhelming (d) overwhelming
- 9 The company clearly states that the product good quality and long-term use.
 (a) maintains (b) struggles (c) guarantees (d) imitates

EXTRA VOCABULARY

- 10 When you are not sure of the answer in an exam, it is better to think carefully and rather than leave it empty.
 (a) mess (b) guess (c) stress (d) press
- 11 Before exams, students usually spend time doing so they can remember their lessons better.
 (a) division (b) revision (c) decision (d) vision



12. Having many exams in one week can put students under a lot of
 a pleasure b measure c pressure d texture
13. While searching for her keys, she suddenly they were in her bag.
 a memorized b realized c recognized d civilized
14. Schools help students their abilities through practice and learning.
 a envelope b develop c ignore d blame
15. Buying things you don't need is often and wastes money.
 a necessary b unnecessary c temporary d ordinary
16. The training was very, so everyone felt tired afterward.
 a silent b violent c intense d distant
17. Her final in the biology course was an A, which made her very proud.
 a rank b grade c degree d rate
18. He decided to cut back on his to save more money each month.
 a lending b spending c bending d mending
19. The project had very tight, so the team worked late every night.
 a breadlines b headlines c deadlines d redlines
20. It is going to rain later, so you should take an umbrella.
 a responsibly b reasonably c visibly d possibly
21. The tutoring were very helpful in preparing her for the math test.
 a tensions b missions c sessions d fashions
22. Even though she was nervous, she decided to give the new sport
 a a sigh b a lie c a cry d a try
23. Last year, he the school's debate club to improve his public speaking.
 a coined b joined c purloined d enjoyed
24. She attended a creative writing to get feedback on her novel.
 a friendship b leadership c workshop d scholarship
25. She decided to take a class in art because she loves making pottery.
 a dynamic b ceramic c endemic d academic
26. He with the difficult math problem for over an hour before solving it.
 a wiggled b giggled c jiggled d struggled
27. The potter used a special type of wet, gray to make the vase.
 a play b clay c slay d sleigh



28. With careful work, she began to the metal into a beautiful sculpture.
 (a) scrape (b) shape (c) drape (d) grape
29. You are finish your assignment before you go out to play.
 (a) opposed to (b) exposed to (c) supposed to (d) disposed to
30. The demonstrated the technique before letting the students try it themselves.
 (a) instructor (b) employer (c) destructor (d) procurator
31. The news of the last-minute change in plans was completely
 (a) respected (b) suspected (c) unexpected (d) inspected
32. After his vacation, he felt completely and ready to return to work.
 (a) taxed (b) relaxed (c) relaxing (d) depressed
33. a positive atmosphere in the classroom helps students learn better.
 (a) Relating (b) Creating (c) berating (d) debating
34. To from social media for a while can be very good for your mental health.
 (a) connect (b) respect (c) inspect (d) disconnect
35. Constant at work can lead to health problems if not managed properly.
 (a) distress (b) stress (c) press (d) caress
36. She needed all her to solve the complex puzzle in front of her.
 (a) hocus (b) locust (c) focus (d) crocus
37. Her first at the new job was to organize the company's files.
 (a) mask (b) tusk (c) task (d) bask
38. The old photograph always him of his happy childhood summers.
 (a) minds (b) finds (c) remember (d) reminds
39. Moving to a new country made her think a lot about her own and roots.
 (a) density (b) identity (c) intensity (d) necessity
40. Learning to play an instrument well requires a lot of and practice.
 (a) patience (b) balance (c) entrance (d) distance
41. The artist was admired for her unique and original ideas.
 (a) nativity (b) creativity (c) activity (d) passivity
42. She felt by the harsh criticism and almost gave up on her project.
 (a) discouraged (b) encouraged (c) outraged (d) managed
43. He is a very musician who can play several instruments beautifully.
 (a) ascended (b) talented (c) concerted (d) unplanted
44. He is quite an person who cries easily during sad movies.
 (a) traditional (b) emotional (c) additional (d) conditional



45. He the warning signs and ended up getting lost in the forest.
 a snored b scored c ignored d adored
46. The speaker was several times by questions from the audience.
 a corrupted b interrupted c erupted d interested
47. She visits her grandmother to help her with shopping.
 a frequently b influentially c consequentially d secretly
48. Overcoming difficult makes us stronger and more confident.
 a balances b challenges c passages d messages
49. She hired a photographer for her wedding to ensure perfect photos.
 a additional b professional c transitional d traditional
50. The tuned their instruments before the concert began.
 a magicians b technicians c musicians d positions
51. This dish was a dessert, but now it is served as a starter.
 a terminally b originally c finally d imaginary
52. He has a passion for and loves capturing landscapes with his camera.
 a geography b biography c photography d tomography
53. The job a university degree and at least three years of experience.
 a inquired b acquired c required d inspired
54. To waste, we should recycle paper, plastic, and glass.
 a deduce b reduce c produce d induce

PREPOSITIONS & EXPRESSIONS

55. The jar was filled honey, so we had to be careful while opening it.
 a with b of c in d from
56. She enjoys spending time reading and drawing instead of watching TV.
 a on b for c by d with
57. Last Saturday, I joined a small weekend workshop ceramic art a small weekend workshop on ceramic art.
 a on b of c at d for
58. During study hours, it is important to disconnect social media and phone notifications.
 a from b with c for d upon
59. To complete your project successfully, you need to on your tasks carefully.
 a focus b work c depend d rely



- 60 Teachers must with problems calmly and politely.
 a deal b work c focus d think
- 61 Reading regularly has a great benefit improving vocabulary and comprehension.
 a of b from c into d about

SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS

- 62 When students "are encouraged" from their teacher, they feel more confident and ready to continue working. The synonyms for "encouraged" are
 a motivated b supported c frustrated d defeated e exhausted
- 63 When the work is well organized and not too much, a person does not feel overwhelmed. The antonyms for "overwhelmed" are
 a overloaded b stressed c pressed d calm e relaxed
- 64 A healthy life means having the right amount of work, rest, and free time. You should have balance in your life. The synonyms for "balance" are
 a stability b instability c difficulty d harmony e confusion
- 65 When a country faces problems and its economy becomes weaker instead of improving, it does not show "growth". The antonyms for "growth" are
 a advance b slowdown c increase d rise e decline
- 66 Learning a new skill takes time, and people need to stay calm and wait without getting angry. They need patience. The synonyms for "patience" are:
 a tolerance b endurance c violence d impatience e disturbance
- 67 A student who can sing, draw, or play music very well is considered special in ability. They are talented. The synonyms for "talented" are:
 a gifted b skilled c limited d untrained e weak-minded
- 68 Art, writing, and design depend on new ideas and original thinking. These fine arts are a creativity. The synonyms for "creativity" are
 a imagination b originality c repetition d imitation e limitation
- 69 A building that covers a wide area and has many rooms cannot be described as little in size. It isn't small. The antonyms for "small" are
 a tall b large c huge d tiny e minor
- 70 Feeling very motivated and supported, he was greatly encouraged by his mentor's feedback. The synonyms for 'encouraged' are
 a inspired b discouraged c retired d rewired e motivated
- 71 After the sudden deadline change, she felt completely overwhelmed by the amount of work. The synonyms for 'overwhelmed' are
 a swamped b clamped c flooded d nodded e ignored



72

To achieve a healthy lifestyle, one must keep a proper balance between work and rest. The synonyms for 'balance' are:

- a equality b delirium c stability d ability e mobility

73

The company's remarkable growth was evident in its expanding market share. The synonyms for 'growth' are

- a expansion b mansion c development d envelopment e drawback

74

Good teachers show great patience even when students ask the same questions repeatedly. The synonyms for 'patience' are

- a tolerance b brilliance c calmness d assurance e insurance

75

She is a truly talented musician who can play five different instruments. The synonyms for 'talented' are:

- a gifted b shifted c skilled d milled e spilled

76

Artistic creativity often involves thinking in new and original ways. The synonyms for 'creativity' are

- a innovation b renovation c originality d brutality e formality



Grammar

seem to, (be) meant to, (be) supposed to

seem يبدو

He is seemed happy XX

لا تأتي في المبني للمجهول

He is seeming happy XX

لا تأتي في الاستمرار

He seems happily XX

لا يأتي بعدها حال

seem

to + inf

He seems to be tired .

صفة

she seems happy with her husband .

like + صفة + اسم

you seem like a smart man .

like + جملة

It seems like he will miss the next match .

that + جملة

It seems that he forgot to close the door .

as if / as though + فاعل + فعل

It seems as if / as though their marriage is over.

من (الضروري / المفترض) ان **be meant to + inf**

الفرض من الشيء

The police are meant to protect all people .

حقيقة الشيء

Doctors are meant to help patients .

تكليف بعمل شيء

You are meant to finish your homework today.

توقع حدوث شيء

The plane is meant to arrive at ٧ o'clock.

be meant to



يعني / ينوي / يريد *mean*

<i>mean</i>	يعني / يقصد	what do you <u>mean</u> ?- I didn't mean to upset her.
	يمثل / يعتبر	my father <u>means</u> everything .
	يريد	I <u>mean</u> Ali to come to my birthday .
	ينوي	I <u>mean</u> to attend your wedding .
	<i>to</i> + شيء / شخص	I didn't <u>mean that</u> problem to happen.
	يستلزم او يتطلب مع فاعل غير عاقل <i>+ing</i>	

Studying abroad means living away from your family.

من المفترض ان *be supposed to + inf*

<i>be supposed to</i>	الضرورة / الالتزام	He <u>is supposed to</u> cook dinner .
	توقع / تنبؤ	It <u>is supposed to</u> rain .
	نصيحة	You <u>are supposed to</u> obey your parents .
	ترتيبات	she <u>is supposed to</u> attend the party .
	خطط لم تنفذ	we <u>are supposed to</u> do our work but we couldn't .
	اعتذار	sorry, I <u>was supposed to</u> come early but I up late .

be supposed to be + ing
في حالة الاستمرار

be supposed to have + p.p
في حالة التام

He is supposed to be studying for the exam now.

She was supposed to have arrived earlier.

لاحظ استخدام الآتي

جملة كاملة *It seems to + (object) that*

It seems to me that he isn't the right person for the job.

= I think he isn't the right...



يبدو أن هناك *There seem(s) to ...*

There seems to have been a mistake. My name isn't on the list.

لاحظ الاسم المفرد

There seem to be a lot of people outside.

لاحظ الاسم الجمع

لاحظ عند نفي (seem) يمكن أن نضم قبله أو بعده (not) كالآتي

She doesn't seem to be at home.

(Informal)

She seems not to be at home.

(More formal)

EXERCISES ON GRAMMAR

Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d :

- 1 Nabil is supposed dinner.
 a to cook b cook c to have cook d to cooking
- 2 I seem the first student to arrive at school today.
 a being b to be c to have d to have being
- 3 It to snow last week.
 a didn't suppose b is not supposed
 c haven't been supposed d wasn't supposed
- 4 She like a good doctor , patients like her.
 a supposes b seems c means d is supposed
- 5 After being fired from work, he nervous.
 a seemed b was supposed c was meant to d meant
- 6 He to spy on his neighbours.
 a is seemed b is meaning c is supposed d isn't supposed
- 7 Clothes be getting more and more expensive all the time.
 a are meant b are supposed c seem to d want to
- 8 The car to have been repaired . it is running perfectly now.
 a supposed b seems c is supposing d meant
- 9 The car to be private , but the older son used it as a taxi.
 a seem b is supposing c meant d was meant



- 10 I to have left my keys at home. I can't find them anywhere.
 a mean b seem c am supposed d suppose
- 11 It to snow last week.
 a didn't suppose b wasn't supposed
 c hasn't supposed d wasn't supposing
- 12 Maya meant you.
 a calling b to be called c to call d she called
- 13 Leila was to come to lunch. What's happened?
 a seemed b seem c supposed d suppose
- 14 You weren't supposed to park here. I mean you here.
 a should park b shouldn't park
 c should have parked d shouldn't have parked
- 15 The decor to keep the mind concentrated on the making of money.
 a seemed b was seemed c meant d was meant
- 16 The buses to arrive every 15 minutes.
 a are meaning b mean c are meant d meant
- 17 I thought we could be friends, but I guess it just wasn't to be.
 a suppose b meant c seemed d meaning
- 18 You meant to keep the children out of trouble.
 a have b will c should d were
- 19 was meant to be a chocolate cake, but I dropped it.
 a He b There c It d They
- 20 The speed at which we have access to new information us to be cautious.
 a seems b supposes c supports d means
- 21 The news, which was meant be new, was actually a day or two old.
 a that b to c as d as if
- 22 There are adverts that to appear in the strangest places.
 a mean b suppose c seem d feel
- 23 The train has already left. What are we to do now?
 a supposed b mean c supposing d meaning
- 24 Adverts are supposed to be honest. They be that!
 a should b would c could d might



- 25 The charity to help the homeless in the district.
 a supposed b was meant c is seemed d was meaning
- 26 I didn't this accident to happen.
 a mean b seem c suppose d propose
- 27 She doesn't to have revised enough.
 a mean b suppose c seem d show
- 28 I called Soha but it was a wrong number. I seem to
 a mistake b be mistaking c have mistaken d mistook
- 29 It that someone stole Rania's car.
 a appears b means c supposes d seems
- 30 It seems the end of the world came.
 a as b as well as c just as d as if
- 31 It to me that you don't want to come with us.
 a seems b means c supposes d appears
- 32 Parents to foster their children.
 a meant b are meant c seem d suppose
- 33 The Korean film to be awarded the Oscar, but it wasn't.
 a seemed b was supposed c meant d appeared
- 34 The car to be damaged now.
 a seem b seems c is seemed d is seeming
- 35 It seemed everyone that the team would lose the final.
 a like b to c as if d as though
- 36 Habiba is at the station. She seems for someone.
 a to wait b to have waited c to be waiting d to be waited
- 37 It like Ahmed is going to sell his house.
 a seems b means c appears d supposes
- 38 What do you by giving me all these tasks?
 a seem b appear c suppose d mean
- 39 Installing new computers in the office will retraining the staff.
 a seem to b seem c mean d be meant
- 40 Losing this job means looking for another. "Means" here equals in meaning.
 a acquire b enquire c inquire d require



41. I have to be at the airport by nine. It getting up early.
 a means b seems c looks d supposes
42. When I shake my head, it usually 'no'.
 a means b seems c supposes d is meant
43. What the word 'wig' mean?
 a does b is c has d will
44. I didn't the glass to break.
 a mean b seem c suppose d appear
45. Big offices for teachers only.
 a mean b are meant c suppose d are supposed
46. I don't think you are meant football.
 a to b as c for d that
47. Don't call Nabil. He is supposed dinner.
 a cook b cooked c be cooked d to be cooking
48. We to travel today but the car has broken down.
 a were meaning b were supposed c are supposed d seemed
49. After the operation, my father's health to be improving.
 a seems b means c is meant d is seemed
50. The crime have been committed by a left-handed man.
 a seems to b is supposed to c meant to d is meant to
51. I hope you to do better.
 a seem b mean c be meant d supposed
52. He insists on gambling on horse racing even if it means all his money.
 a to lose b to losing c losing d to be lost
53. The victim seems to with a blunt instrument.
 a be killed b have killed c have been killed d be killing
54. The guests to buy flowers for the hostess.
 a are supposed b are seemed c supposed d is meant
55. She seems to have left the party. This means it seems that she the party.
 a is leaving b be leaving c had left d has left
56. The bus driver needs to concentrate. You are to talk to him.
 a supposed b not supposed c meant d seemed



- 146



Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets to give the same meaning:

- 1 People say that this film is very funny. (supposed)
- 2 My intention was to call you, but I forgot. (meant)
- 3 He gives the impression of being very tired. (seems)
- 4 The train is scheduled to arrive at 6:00 PM. (supposed)
- 5 It looks like it is going to rain. (appears)
- 6 You shouldn't park your car here; it's against the rules. (supposed)
- 7 I didn't intend to offend anyone with my comment. (mean)
- 8 It looks as if they have finished the project. (seem)
- 9 We expected the weather to be sunny today, but it's cloudy. (supposed)
- 10 This party was intended to be a surprise for Sarah. (meant)
- 11 Why aren't you in bed? You should be asleep by now. (supposed)
- 12 The purpose of this tool is for cutting thick glass. (meant)
- 13 There is a rumor that he escaped from prison last night. (supposed)
- 14 You are under a strict obligation to keep this information confidential. (supposed)
- 15 I should have completed the assignment by now, but I'm still working on it. (supposed)
- 16 The plan was intended to be kept a secret from the media. (meant)
- 17 By the time we arrive, the party is expected to have already started. (supposed)
- 18 It appears that he is upset about something. (seems)
- 19 She intended to call you yesterday. (meant)
- 20 It feels as if the weather is getting warmer. (seems)
- 21 This device was designed to purify water. (meant)
- 22 It appears that he knows the answer. (seems)
- 23 These pills are intended to reduce fever. (meant)



Part Two : Lessons 3 & 4

KEY VOCABULARY

Farghally

simple (adj)	بسيط	relax(v-n)	يسترخي / استرخاء
entrepreneurship(n)	ريادة الأعمال	customized(adj)	مخصص حسب الطلب
income(n)	دخل	review(n)	مراجعة / تقييم
repetitive(adj)	متكرر/رتيب	creativity(n)	إبداع/ قدرة ابتكارية
feel the same (v)		يشعر بنفس الشعور / يحس بالمثل	

DEFINITIONS:

felt the same	شعرت بنفس الشعور / أحسست بالمثل	repetitive and unchanging
simple	بسيط	easy to make
entrepreneurship	ريادة الأعمال	starting a small business
customized	فُكِّف حسب الطلب/ فُخِّص	designs made especially for them

EXTRA VOCABULARY

projects (n)	مشاريع	handmade	مصنوع يدوياً	beads(n)	خرز
threads(n)	خيوط	offered (v)	عرض	expect(v)	يتوقع
fun(n)	متعة	events(n)	أحداث / مناسبات	effort(n)	جهد
style(n)	أسلوب / نمط	supplies(n)	مستلزمات / إمدادات	content(n)	محتوى / راضي
Engage(v)	يجذب / يشرك	impression(n)	انطباع	uneven(adj)	غير متساوي
process(n)	عملية	designs(n)	تصميمات	initials(n)	الأحرف الأولى
pay (v)(n)	يدفع / راتب	earn (v)	يكسب	soon (adv)	قريباً
special(adj)	خاص / مميز	source(n)	مصدر	enjoyment(n)	استمتاع
opportunity(n)	فرصة	materials(n)	مواد	customs(n)	تقاليد
art (n)	فن	customers(n)	زبائن / عملاء	costs(n)	تكاليف
		service(n)	خدمة		
scrolling (n)	التمرير (على الشاشة)	tutorial(n)	درس تعليمي / برنامج إرشادي		
term(n)	مصطلح / فصل دراسي	key chains(n)	سلاسل المفاتيح		



time management(n)	إدارة الوقت	pronunciation(n)	النطق
jogging(n)	الهولة (المشي بسرعة)	challenging(adj)	صعب / مليء بالتحديات
gaming(n)	ألعاب الفيديو / اللعب	photography(n)	تصوير فوتوغرافي
request (v)(n)	يطلب / طلب	confusing (adj)	مربك
crafting(n)	صناعة يدوية / حرفية	competition(n)	منافسة
surprised(adj)	متفاجئ	classmates(n)	زملاء الصف

SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS

Word

Synonyms

Antonyms

enjoyment

استمتاع

pleasure / fun / delight /
amusement

displeasure / boredom

يأس - ملل

soon

حالا - قريبا

shortly / quickly / promptly
/ before long / imminently

later / eventually

فيما بعد - في النهاية

customized

مخصص حسب الطلب

personalized / tailored /
made-to-order

standard / generic

عام - قياسي

uneven

متفاوت - غير مستو

rough / irregular / bumpy

even / consistent

منتظم - متسق

confusing

مربك - محير

puzzling / unclear /
misleading

clear / simple / obvious

واضح - بسيط

challenging

تحدي

difficult / tough / hard

easy / simple / effortless

سهل - بسيط

improved

محسن

enhanced / bettered /
upgraded

worsened / declined

تدهور - اصبح اسوء

surprised

مدهش

astonished / amazed

unsurprised / expecting

متوقع

scrolling

يتصفح

browsing / skimming /
navigating

fixing / pausing / stopping

يوقف - يثبت

handmade

صناعة يدوية

handcrafted / homemade

machine-made / factory-made

صناعة بالالات - مميكنة

**offered**

عرض - قدم

presented - proposed

withdrew / refused,

انسحب - رفض

initials

بدايات

first letters - abbreviation
- acronym

full name / signature

الاسم بالكامل - التوقيع

EXPRESSIONS AND PREPOSITIONS

coming out

يخرج / يصدر

takes practice

يستغرق ممارسة

took up

بدأ في (ممارسة هواية/عمل)

gain strength

يكتسب قوه

scrolling through

يتصفح / يمرر خلال

expect to

يتوقع أن

supposed to

من المفترض أن

earn from

يكسب من

with their initials

مع أحرفهم الأولى

for fun

للمتعة

grow into

يتطور إلى / ينمو ليصبح

source of

مصدر لـ

a tutorial on making

درس تعليمي عن صنع

with creativity

بالإبداع

made them myself

صنعتها بنفسي

in free time

في وقت الفراغ

a way to relax

وسيلة للاسترخاء

step toward

خطوة نحو

LANGUAGE NOTES

win - beat - gain - earn

win

يفوز بـ / يكسب

(a medal ميدالية / a cup كأس / a race سباق / a competition مسابقة / a match / a game an award / a prize)

beat

يهزم

(someone شخص / a team فريق)

gain

يزداد - يكتسب

experience خبرة / information معلومات / Knowledge معرفة - (weight وزن / height طول / speed سرعة)

money / his living

يكسب المال / عيشه (من العمل الجاد)

earn money / his living



process - operation

process

عملية (طبيعية أو صناعية)

Photosynthesis process

عملية البناء لظوئي

peace process

operation

عملية جراحية / عسكرية / تجارية

operate on

يجري عملية علي

open-heart operation

operate machines

يشغل الات

operation

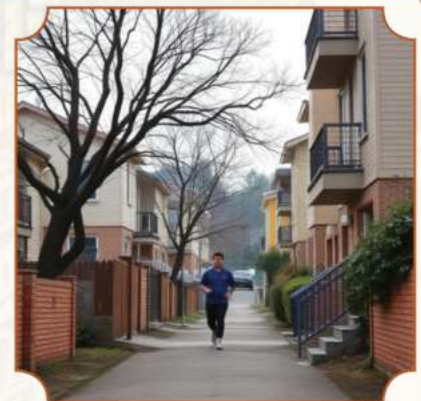
عمل / تشغيل

intelligence operation

عملية مخابرات

LISTENING

"Last month, many people in our neighborhood decided to start using their **free time** more wisely. Some wanted to build their bodies, while others hoped to learn new skills. I chose morning **jogging** because it seemed to be a simple way to get healthier. I was supposed to jog for 20 minutes every day, but on the first morning, the cold air made it harder than I expected. Still, the **fresh air** and quiet streets were for calming. So, I kept going even if I couldn't complete the full-time. My cousin Miam wanted to learn a new language. She picked Turkish because it appeared to be easy for beginners. At first, the words seemed to make sense, but she quickly realized that **pronunciation** takes practice. Another neighbor, Hassam, joined a gym near the market. His training was meant to help him **gain strength**, but the the exercises were tougher than they looked. However, after a few days, he said he felt more energetic. By the end of the month, we all agreed that using our free time wisely doesn't always go as planned, but it always helps us grow, learn, and improve ourselves.



Shaimaa Farghally



READING

Small Idea That Became Something Bigger

When I started Grade 10, I often felt that school **took up** all my time. Between homework, projects, and exams, my days **felt the same**. One evening, while scrolling through videos online, I saw a tutorial on making **handmade** key **chains** using beads and threads. It looked fun, so I tried it just to relax.

At first, the key chains were supposed to be simple, but mine kept coming out uneven. Still, I enjoyed the process. Every evening, I practiced a little, and my designs slowly improved. One day, I brought a few key chains to school, and my friends were surprised that I had made them myself. Two classmates asked if I could make key **chains** with their **initials**—and they offered to pay. I didn't expect to earn money from something I did for fun, but soon teachers and other students began requesting **customized designs**. I created a small price list and even started making special key chains for school events. What began as a way to relax became a small source of income. By the end of the term, I learned that hobbies are not just for enjoyment. **With creativity**, practice, and effort, a hobby can grow into an opportunity. Sometimes, what you do in your free time can become your first step toward **entrepreneurship**.



KEY VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The young artist's seemed endless, producing paintings of great originality.
 (a) sensitivity (b) creativity (c) passivity (d) captivity
- 2 After a long and stressful week at work, all he wanted to do was to
 (a) retract (b) relax (c) react (d) refract
- 3 They asked the designer for a version of the logo to match their brand's new philosophy.
 (a) optimized (b) customized (c) summarized (d) criticized
- 4 Writing a for the latest best-selling novel took her the entire afternoon.
 (a) preview (b) review (c) interview (d) overview
- 5 The machine's beeping sound was slowly driving everyone in the office insane.
 (a) competitive (b) repetitive (c) tentative (d) preventive
- 6 The company reported a significant rise in its quarterly due to successful new projects.
 (a) outcome (b) income (c) become (d) welcome



7 His path in began with a simple idea and a small loan from his family.

- a scholarship b entrepreneurship c relationship d dictatorship

8 The instructions for the device were surprisingly and took only a few minutes to understand.

- a sample b simple c dimple d pimple

9 She knew exactly how I was feeling because she after watching the emotional movie.

- a faced the blame b felt the same
c dealt the game d knelt in flame

10 Starting a small online store was her first real step into the world of

- a leadership b entrepreneurship
c readership d partnership

11 His monthly from freelancing was just enough to cover his rent and living expenses.

- a income b welcome c overcome d outcome

EXTRA VOCABULARY

12 To complete her art class assignment, she decided to work on two separate creative

- a rejects b projects c objects d subjects

13 While waiting for the bus, he spent most of his time through social media on his phone.

- a strolling b scrolling c polling d controlling

14 Before assembling the furniture, I watched a helpful online for clear instructions.

- a pictorial b tutorial c memorial d editorial

15 At the local market, she bought a beautiful ceramic mug from a talented potter.

- a handmade b unplayed c band-aid d dismayed

16 For the school fundraiser, the children made colorful to sell to their parents.

- a key chains b main planes c brain strains d rain trains

17 To make the necklace, she carefully selected small, colorful glass from the craft box.

- a deeds b beads c leads d feeds

18 To finish her embroidery, she needed matching in several different shades of blue.

- a threads b sheds c heads d spreads



- 19 The blue bicycle with the broken bell is , not my younger brother's identical red one.
 (a) shine (b) mine (c) line (d) pine
- 20 The local bakery a free sample of its new pastry to every customer who entered.
 (a) proffered (b) offered (c) suffered (d) buffered
- 21 When you send an important email, you should a reply within a day or two.
 (a) reject (b) expect (c) inspect (d) collect
- 22 The children had great at the birthday party playing games and eating cake.
 (a) sun (b) fun (c) run (d) nun
- 23 The office is that all staff members submit their reports by this Friday.
 (a) requesting (b) suggesting (c) protesting (d) investing
- 24 The famous artist his most celebrated sculpture over a period of three long years.
 (a) debated (b) created (c) waited (d) grated
- 25 The community center posted a calendar listing all the upcoming for the summer season.
 (a) events (b) laments (c) invents (d) contents
- 26 In scientific writing, it is important to define each technical you use very clearly.
 (a) firm (b) term (c) germ (d) worm
- 27 Winning the marathon required a tremendous amount of training and personal
 (a) comfort (b) effort (c) deport (d) resort
- 28 The cat walked slowly its food bowl when it heard the sound of the can opening.
 (a) forward (b) toward (c) sward (d) reward
- 29 Her unique fashion , which mixed vintage and modern pieces, was admired by her friends.
 (a) aisle (b) style (c) tile (d) while
- 30 The map's poorly drawn legend and small print made it very to read.
 (a) amusing (b) confusing (c) diffusing (d) refusing
- 31 Before starting the science experiment, we gathered all the necessary from the closet.
 (a) applies (b) supplies (c) complies (d) replies
- 32 She finds that with clay is a wonderful way to relieve stress after a long day.
 (a) drafting (b) crafting (c) laughing (d) rafting



33. The wonderful smell of fresh bread filled the entire house while she was
 a) making b) baking c) shaking d) taking
34. The of the documentary was both informative and surprisingly entertaining for viewers.
 a) intent b) content c) repent d) cement
35. Good is an essential skill for success in both university and the workplace.
 a) time management b) prime engagement
 c) rhyme arrangement d) lime encouragement
36. The fierce between the two top teams made the championship final very exciting.
 a) repetition b) competition c) petition d) addition
37. Teachers use games and discussions to their students more actively in the lessons.
 a) enrage b) engage c) stage d) gauge
38. His firm handshake and confident smile made a great first at the job interview.
 a) expression b) impression c) confession d) depression
39. Because the floor was old and, we had to be careful not to trip while walking.
 a) eleven b) uneven c) heaven d) seven
40. Learning a new language is a slow that requires consistent practice over many months.
 a) recess b) process c) excess d) success
41. He the piano piece for two hours every day to prepare for his big recital.
 a) practiced b) enticed c) sliced d) priced
42. The architect presented three different building for the client to review and choose from.
 a) assigns b) designs c) resigns d) signs
43. After taking the writing course, her essay structure and grammar significantly
 a) removed b) improved c) approved d) disproved
44. She was pleasantly by a small birthday party that her friends had secretly planned.
 a) advised b) surprised c) revised d) devised
45. She embroidered her, S.M., on the corner of her new leather notebook.
 a) officials b) initials c) financials d) crucibles



46. For the group assignment, she collaborated closely with her three from biology class.
 (a) class rates (b) classmates (c) fast weights (d) glass plates
47. To for her new laptop, she saved a part of her allowance every week for a year.
 (a) say (b) pay (c) clay (d) tray
48. He wanted to enough money from his summer job to buy a car by September.
 (a) learn (b) earn (c) yearn (d) burn
49. The manager said the report would be finished and sent to us , likely by tomorrow.
 (a) noon (b) soon (c) moon (d) spoon
50. The company the software by adding special features for our specific business needs.
 (a) summarized (b) customized (c) patronized (d) recognized
51. They made a dinner with all his favorite foods to celebrate his graduation.
 (a) spatial (b) special (c) vessel (d) trestle
52. The journalist refused to reveal the confidential who provided the important documents.
 (a) course (b) source (c) force (d) divorce
53. Reading a good book in a quiet corner is her greatest on a lazy Sunday afternoon.
 (a) employment (b) enjoyment (c) deployment (d) annoyance
54. Studying abroad presented a wonderful to learn a new language and culture.
 (a) community (b) opportunity (c) unity (d) immunity
55. We bought all the necessary , like wood and nails, from the local hardware store.
 (a) memorials (b) materials (c) serials (d) arboreals
56. Wearing black at a funeral is a common in many cultures around the world.
 (a) custom (b) ransom (c) wisdom (d) bosom
57. Solving the advanced physics problem was , even for the top students in the class.
 (a) managing (b) challenging (c) scavenging (d) cringing



SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS

58. The children had great fun at the water park all afternoon. The synonyms for 'fun' are.....
 a amusement b misery c delight d boredom e work
59. The road was uneven, making the car ride very bumpy and uncomfortable. The antonyms for 'uneven' are.....
 a rough b smooth c bumpy d level e irregular
60. She was surprised by the unexpected party her friends had planned. The synonyms for 'surprised' are.....
 a shocked b prepared c astonished d expecting e bored
61. The instructions for the new device were confusing and hard to follow. The antonyms for 'confusing' are.....
 a clear b puzzling c simple d misleading e complex
62. The course was challenging, but she learned a lot by the end. The synonyms for 'challenging' are.....
 a easy b difficult c demanding d effortless e simple
63. His grades have improved significantly since he started studying every night. The synonyms for 'improved' are.....
 a worsened b bettered c enhanced d declined e deteriorated
64. He spent all evening scrolling through social media on his phone. The synonyms for 'scrolling' are.....
 a browsing b fixing c pausing d skimming e stopping
65. She gifted him a beautiful handmade scarf for his birthday. The antonyms for 'handmade' are.....
 a handcrafted b machine-made c artisanal d factory-made e custom
66. The store offered a %50 discount to all customers on the opening day. The synonyms for 'offered' are.....
 a presented b withdrew c gave d refused e proposed
67. We expect the guests to arrive before dinner is served. The antonyms for 'expect' are.....
 a anticipate b doubt c foresee d disbelieve e believe
68. The package should arrive soon, hopefully by tomorrow morning. The antonyms for 'soon' are.....
 a shortly b later c promptly d never e quickly
69. He ordered a customized phone case with his favorite photo on it. The antonyms for 'customized' are.....
 a personalized b standard c tailored d generic e special



70 He embroidered his initials on the new leather wallet. The synonyms for 'initials' are:

- a full name b first letters c signature d abbreviation e nickname

EXPRESSIONS AND PREPOSITIONS

71 After months of hard work, her new song is finally coming on Friday.

- a in b at c out d by

72 He recently took guitar lessons during the summer break.

- a for b at c with d up

73 She spent an hour scrolling old photos on her phone.

- a through b of c at d for

74 Students are supposed complete their homework before class.

- a to b at c for d with

75 He signed the document their initials at the bottom corner.

- a on b in c with d of

WRITING SKILLS

Hobby Review

A Review: A piece of writing where you share your opinion about a hobby, book, or movie.

المراجعة: قطعة كتابية تشارك فيها رأيك حول هواية، كتاب، أو فيلم.

The Hook: A question or surprising detail used in the introduction to engage the reader.

جملة الجذب: سؤال أو تفصيل مفاجئ يُستخدم في المقدمة لإشراك القارئ.

Description: Giving main information like what the hobby involves and when you started it.

الوصف: إعطاء معلومات أساسية مثل ما تتضمنه الهواية ومتى بدأتها.

Evaluation: Sharing what is good or bad about the hobby with reasons and examples.

التقييم: مشاركة الجوانب الجيدة أو السيئة في الهواية مع الأسباب والأمثلة.

Opinion Phrases: Using words like "In my view," "I think," or "I believe."

عبارات الرأي: استخدام كلمات مثل "من وجهة نظري"، "أعتقد"، أو "أؤمن".

Recommendation: The final paragraph where you tell the reader who would enjoy the hobby.

التوصية: الفقرة الأخيرة حيث تخبر القارئ بمن سيستمتع بهذه الهواية.

Restated Opinion: Saying your opinion again in the conclusion but in a different way.

إعادة صياغة الرأي: ذكر رأيك مرة أخرى في الخاتمة ولكن بطريقة مختلفة.



EXERCISES ON WRITING SKILLS

1. In a hobby review, the main goal of the introduction is to
 - a list all the costs
 - b engage the reader and name the hobby
 - c say goodbye
 - d write a poem
2. To grab a reader's attention immediately, a writer should use a
 - a math formula
 - b spelling mistake
 - c blank line
 - d hook like a question or surprising detail
3. In which part of the review should you explain how the hobby works and the steps involved?
 - a The descriptive paragraph
 - b The title
 - c The final advice
 - d The signature
4. When writing the evaluation paragraph, it is important to
 - a only list facts
 - b draw a picture
 - c support your opinion with reasons and examples
 - d forget your name
5. The final paragraph of a hobby review is called the
 - a introduction
 - b description
 - c hook
 - d recommendation
6. Which phrase is best for sharing a personal thought in a review ?
 - a Once upon a time
 - b In my view
 - c The end.
 - d Help me!
7. In the Recommendation section, you should mention
 - a your birthday
 - b the weather
 - c a secret
 - d who should try the hobby
8. A review is considered balanced if it gives a impression.
 - a fake
 - b mixed (positive and negative)
 - c hidden
 - d silent
9. The Introduction must catch attention and
 - a name the hobby being reviewed
 - b give the final result
 - c list every mistake
 - d ask for money



SKILLS CORNER

Shaimaa Farghally

Read the passage , then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Improving one's life is a goal that requires effort, patience, and dedication. One of the key elements of improvement is adopting a positive attitude. A positive mindset helps individuals face challenges with optimism, making it easier to overcome obstacles. It encourages problem-solving and allows a person to see opportunities in difficult situations. This change in perspective is essential for growth and success in various aspects of life, including education, career, and personal relationships. Another important factor in improving life is setting clear goals. Whether it's learning a new skill, improving health, or advancing in a career, having specific goals provides direction and motivation. With clear objectives in mind, it becomes easier to stay focused and measure progress. Moreover, achieving small goals along the way boosts confidence and helps individuals stay motivated.

Regular exercise has a positive impact on health. Therefore, taking care of one's health is crucial for improvement. Regular exercise, a healthy diet, and sufficient rest are necessary for both physical and mental well-being. When a person feels healthy, they are more energetic and productive, making it easier to pursue other goals and enjoy life fully.

Improving life requires a positive attitude, clear goals, and a focus on health. These steps lead to greater satisfaction and success in life. It is possible to feel better about yourself.

1. This text is mainly about how to
 - a) face challenges with optimism
 - b) set goals and follow them
 - c) improve different aspects of life
 - d) adopt a positive mindset
2. According to the passage, a positive attitude helps you
 - a) solve problems more easily
 - b) achieve goals without effort
 - c) avoid challenges in life
 - d) find opportunities without taking action
3. The underlined word "direction" means
 - a) confusion
 - b) mistake
 - c) destination
 - d) guidance
4. What can you conclude about setting clear goals?
 - a) It makes life easier without challenges
 - b) It provides motivation and focus
 - c) It eliminates the need for health care
 - d) It allows you to avoid any difficulties
5. Taking care of your health is important because it
 - a) makes you wealthy
 - b) helps you avoid challenges
 - c) reduces the need for goal setting
 - d) boosts energy and productivity
6. Which do you think is necessary for a positive mindset?
 - a) Facing challenges without effort
 - b) Avoiding all obstacles
 - c) Seeing opportunities in difficult situations
 - d) Giving up when things get tough



7 The word confidence is the opposite meaning to

- a certainty b hesitation c satisfaction d courage

TRANSLATION

Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 Science is the key to understanding the world around us. The more we explore it, the more we discover about the universe and ourselves.

- a العلم هو المفتاح لفهم العالم من حولنا. كلما استكشفناه، اكتشفنا المزيد عن الكون وأنفسنا.
b العلم هو السبيل لفهم الأشياء فقط. كلما درسنا الظواهر، اكتشفنا المزيد عن حياتنا.
c العلم هو الطريق لفهم الكون فقط. كلما تقدمنا في دراسته، قلّت معرفتنا عن العالم.
d العلم هو أساس حياتنا اليومية. كلما سعى العلماء لفهم الظواهر، أوجدوا اكتشافات غير مفيدة أحياناً.

2 Having drugs is the most dangerous habit that affects young people badly all over the world. Therefore, governments and individuals should work together to counter this grave threat.

- a ان اكثر العادات الضارة التي تؤثر سلبا على الشعوب في جميع انحاء القارة هي تعطي المخدرات. و لهذا السبب ينبغي على الحكومات و الافراد ان تتعاون لمكافحة هذا التهديد الخطير.
b ان اكثر العادات الضارة التي تؤثر سلبا على الشباب في جميع انحاء العالم هي تعطي المخدرات. و لهذا السبب ينبغي على الحكومات و الافراد ان تتعاون لمكافحة هذا التهديد الخطير.
c ان اكثر العادات الضارة التي تبدد اموال الشباب في جميع انحاء العالم هي تعطي المخدرات. و لهذا السبب ينبغي على الجمعيات و الافراد ان تتعاون لمكافحة هذا التهديد الخطير.
d ان اكثر العادات الضارة التي تؤثر سلبا على الشباب في جميع انحاء العالم هي تعطي المخدرات. و لهذا السبب ينبغي للحكومات و الافراد ان لا تتعاون للتقليل من هذا التهديد الخطير.

Choose the correct English translation:

3 لقد يسرت التجارة الالكترونية على كثير من الناس عملية البيع والشراء الكترونيا، وهذا بدوره يوفر الوقت و الجهد فضلا عن خلق مناخا تنافسيا.

- a E-commerce has made it easier for many people to buy and trade electronically. This, in turn, saves time and effort in addition to creating a competitive climate.
b E-learning has made it easier for many people to buy and sell electronically. This, in turn, saves time and money in addition to creating a complete climate.
c E-commerce has made it easier for many people to buy and sell electronically. This, in turn, saves time and effort in addition to creating a competitive environment.
d E-commerce has made it easier for many people to buy and sell electrically. This, in turn, saves time and effort in addition to creating a clear environment.



4 يعاني الكثير من الناس من نقص الغذاء لذلك يجب أن يكون لدينا مشروعات زراعية مستدامة.

- a Many people suffer from shortage of food so we could have sustainable cultural projects.
- b Many people suffer from shortage of food and we must have sustainable agricultural projects.
- c Many people suffer from shortage of food, so we must have productive agricultural projects.
- d Many people suffer from shortage of food so we must have sustainable agricultural projects.

Shaimaa Farghally

Shaimaa Farghally



TEST ON UNIT 10

A. Vocabulary and Structures (14 Marks)

1 Choose the Two (2) correct answers out of the Five (5) options given: (2 Marks)

1 Her main enjoyment on weekends is reading novels in the garden. The antonyms for 'enjoyment' are:

- a pleasure b misery c delight d displeasure e amusement

2 The job was very challenging, requiring both skill and patience. The antonyms for 'challenging' are:

- a demanding b easy c tough d simple e stimulating

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (12 Marks)

1 The truth was that he didn't have enough experience to handle such a complex task.

- a nimble b simple c dimple d temple

2 Many companies now offer learning plans to meet the specific needs of their employees.

- a customized b summarized c patronized d victimized

3 After hearing the sad news, I wasn't surprised that you deep sense of loss.

- a dealt the shame b felt the same
c knelt in the rain d dwelt on the name

4 His primary source of comes from renting out the small apartment above his garage.

- a income b outcome c become d welcome

5 The nature of the factory job made the workers feel bored and uninspired.

- a tentative b competitive c primitive d repetitive

6 The team's was the main reason their advertising campaign went viral on social media.

- a activity b creativity c sensitivity d captivity

7 The old bridge to be unsafe, so they closed it.

- a was supposed b was meant c seemed d meant

8 According to the schedule, the train arrive at platform 4.

- a is meant to b is supposed to c seems to a d means to

9 His silence agreement.

- a is supposed to b is meant to c seems to d means



- 10 I to call you earlier, but I got caught up in work.
- a) was meant b) seemed c) was supposed d) meant
- 11 The introduction in the review is to
- a) tell the moral b) engage the reader
c) set the scene d) solve a problem
- 12 The purpose of the introduction in the review is to
- a) give an opinion b) give an advice
c) Catch the reader's attention d) explain the hobby

B. Reading (7 Marks)

3 Read the following passage, then answer the question:

People find it challenging to solve problems quickly. They want to get fast results, or make money, or make life easier. Often, they do not look into the future. They don't think about the long-term **consequences** of their actions.

The story of DDT is a good example. It is a chemical which was developed to kill insects. It was invented in 1940, and very soon it was being used effectively by farmers all over the world.

The results, at first, were successful. The chemical killed the harmful insects which ate the food plants. More crops were produced, and both farmers and industry made a lot of money; however the chemical had effects which scientists hadn't predicted. DDT not only killed the harmful insects but it also killed useful insects. A few insects were strong. They survived and multiplied. In a few years, there were large numbers of these super insects which DDT couldn't kill. DDT was making the problem worse. It was worthless to be used anymore.

Another problem was that the chemical didn't disappear. It stayed in the ground and found its way into rivers, lakes and oceans. So animals began to suffer from different new diseases. Humans also began to have problems, especially, in areas where DDT was widely used. Many governments stopped the use of DDT twenty years ago, but its effects are still with them.

- 1 Which of the following is probably true about DDT?
- a) It kills only harmful insects
b) It kills only useful insects
c) It kills both harmful insects and super insects
d) It kills both harmful insects and useful insects
- 2 What does the word "consequences" refer to, according to the passage?
- a) Bad things that could happen b) Boring things that could happen
c) Useful things that could happen d) Exciting things that could happen
- 3 DDT was a which was developed to kill insects
- a) medicine b) chemical c) drug d) fertilizer



4 Where does DDT end up eventually?

- a) in the ground b) in humans and animals
c) into rivers, lakes and oceans d) into the crops that farmers grow

5 Much damage to the environment happens as people

- a) want to get fast results b) don't think about the future
c) want to make money d) want to make life easier

6 DDT was very at first and more crops were produced.

- a) useful b) harmful c) hateful d) poisonous

7 The insects that survived and multiplied were called insects .

- a) harmful b) useful c) renewable d) super

C. Translation (4 Marks)

4 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation: [2 marks]

1 Scientific researchers have proved that the early experiences of childhood have an effect on man's personality.

- a) أثبت الباحثون العلميون أن التجارب الحديثة للطفولة لها تأثير على شخصية الإنسان.
b) أثبت الباحثون العلميون أن الخبرات المبكرة للطفولة لها تأثير على شخصية الإنسان.
c) أثبتت الأبحاث العلمية أن التجارب المبكرة للطفولة لها تأثير على شخصية الإنسان.
d) أثبت الباحثون العلميون أن التجارب الحديثة للطفولة لها تأثير على سلوك الإنسان.

4 B) Choose the correct English translation: [2 marks]

1 إن مستقبل الحياة على الأرض يتوقف على نجاح الجهود التي نبذلها للتخلص من التلوث البيئي.

- a) The future of life on earth depends on the successful of our efforts to get rid of the environmental pollution.
b) The future of life on earth depends on the success of our efforts to get ride of the environment pollution.
c) The future of life on earth independent on the success of our efforts to get rid of the environmental population.
d) The future of life on earth depends on the success of our efforts to get rid of the environmental pollution.



...arguably

- ### STAMPED ATTENDING

E. Writing

Words to give the same meaning: (1 mark)

- (meant)
- um. (supposed)

Write on the following topic : (3 marks)

Da7ee-7Englizzy

في
اللة الانجليزية

Unit 11

Healthy Choices, Healthy Life



Mrs.

Shaimaa Farghally

انجليزي بقعد في الة ماغ



Part One: Lessons 1 & 2

KEY [TARGET] VOCABULARY

essential (adj)	أساسي، ضروري	cavities(n)	تسوّسات، نخر الأسنان
ignore (v)	يتجاهل	gums(n)	لثة
proactive(adj)	استباقي	stiff(adj)	متصلب
floss (n)	خيط الأسنان	confused(adj)	مرتبك
toxins(n)	السموم	prioritize (v)	يقدّم أولوية
kidneys (n)	كُلَيْتَان.	joints (n)	مفاصل

dehydrated (adj) مصاب بالجفاف

DEFINITIONS:

Ignored	فُتِرَ عَنْهُ، تَجَاهَلَ	failed to pay attention to something
Essential	أساسي، ضروري	absolutely needed; very important
Floss	خيط الأسنان	to clean between your teeth with thread
Gums	لثة	soft tissue in your mouth that surrounds teeth
Cavities	تسوّسات، نخر الأسنان	damage in the teeth

EXTRA VOCABULARY

adults (n)	بالغون	assist(v)	يساعد	avoiding (v)	يَتَجَنَّب
benefit (n/v)	فائدة / يستفيد	brain (n)	دماغ	brush (v/n)	يُفْرِش / فُرْشاة
check-up (n)	فحص	convince (v)	يُقْنِع	cost (n/v)	تُكَلِّف / يَكْلَف
dental (adj)	متعلّق بالأسنان	dentist (n)	طبيب أسنان	fluoride (n)	فلوريد (مادة تقوي الأسنان)
habit (n)	عادة	healthy (adj)	صحي	heart (n)	قلب
ignored (adj)	متجاهل	mouth (n)	فم	movement (n)	حركة
narrator (n)	راوي	natural (adj)	طبيعي	pain (n)	ألم
pay (v)	يدفع	pieces (n)	قطع	prevent (v)	يمنع
rarely (adv)	نادراً	regulate(V)	ينظم	remove (v)	يزيل
risks (n)	مخاطر	severe (adj)	شديد	shiver (v/n)	يرتجش / رعشة



skin (n)	جلد	slippery (adj)	زلق	smile (n/v)	ابتسامة / يبتسم
sound (n)	صوت	stuck (adj)	عالق	sweat (v/n)	يعرق / عرق
swollen (adj)	متنفخ	terrible (adj)	رهيب	plan (n)	خطة
wait (v)	ينتظر	workout (n)	تمرين		
appointment (n)	موعد	bleeding (n/adj)	نزف / نازف		
completely (adv)	بشكل كامل	described (adj)	موصف		
energetic (adj)	نشيط	preventative (adj)	وقائي		
properly (adv)	بشكل صحيح	recommend (v)	يوصي		
regularly (adv)	بانتظام	sicknesses (n)	أمراض		
temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة	toothbrush (n)	فرشاة أسنان		

SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS

Word

Synonyms

Antonyms

sleepy

نعسان

tired -drowsy

awake, alert, energetic

مُتَيْقِظ، مُتَأَهَّب، نشيط

important

مهم

having a great value
significant, crucial, vital

unimportant, trivial, insignificant

غير مهم، تافه

stiff

متصلب

hard to move
tense, inflexible

rigid, flexible, loose, supple

مرن، رخو، لين

wash out

يغسل

clean up
rinse, clean, flush

stain, dirty, soil

يلطخ، يوسخ، يلوث

confused

مربك

unsure - mixed up-
puzzled

clear, certain,

واضح، متأكد، سليم الفكر

essential

أساسي

crucial, vital, necessary

nonessential, optional, unnecessary

غير أساسي، اختياري، غير ضروري

regularly

بانتظام

consistently, routinely

irregularly, occasionally

بشكل غير منتظم

terrible

رهيب

awful, dreadful, horrible

wonderful, excellent, marvelous

رائع، متميز، مذهش

swollen

متنفخ

inflamed-enlarged

deflated, reduced

متقلص، متضائل



EXPRESSIONS, COLLOCATIONS AND PREPOSITIONS

BREAK DOWN FOOD

يفكك الطعام

clean up

يَنْظِف، يَرْتَب

mixed up

مُخْلُوط، مُرْتَبِك

wash out

يَغْسِل، يَشْطَف

not just for

لَيْسَ فَقَطْ لِأَجْلِ

necessary for

ضَرْوَرِي لـ

taking out

يُخْرِج، يَقْلَع (مِثْلَ سِنِّ)

check-up

فَحْص، كِشَف

at least

عَلَى الْأَقْل

worried about

قَلِقَ عَلَيَّ، مُهْتَمٌّ بِشَأْن

pay for

يُدْفَع ثَمَن

essential for

أَسَاسِي لـ، جَوْهَرِي لـ

waiting for

يَنْتَظِر

stuck between

عَالِقٌ بَيْنَ

take care of

يُعْتَنِي بـ

lead to

يُؤَدِّي إِلَى

benefit of

فَائِدَة

LANGUAGE NOTES

traditions and customs

عادات وتقاليد مجتمع

EX

people in the countryside respect their traditions.

habits

عادات شخصية

EX

smoking is a bad habit .

at least

علي الأقل

EX

At least you can help her .

at last

أخيرا

EX

At last , I reached home.

lest

خشية ان

EX

study hard lest I should fail .

list

قائمة

EX

Don't forget the list of shopping



Sleepy & Asleep

Sleepy

نعسان / يشعر بالنعاس (لكن صاحي)
تستخدم لوصف الإحساس بالتعب والرغبة في النوم

EX I feel **sleepy** after studying for several hours.

EX The teacher noticed the **sleepy** children and decided to give them a short break. لاحظ يأتي بعدها أسم

Asleep

نائم فعلاً (في حالة نوم)
تستخدم لوصف الحالة وليس الشعور. (لا يأتي بعدها أسم)

EX The baby is **asleep** in his room.

EX She fell **asleep** during the long journey.

READING

Read the following text :

Why do you think dental floss is as important as a toothbrush?

A healthy **mouth** is essential for your whole body, not just for a beautiful smile. To keep your mouth healthy, you must brush your teeth twice a day with **fluoride** toothpaste. You mustn't forget to use **dental** floss daily. Many students think brushing is enough, but **flossing** is necessary for taking out small pieces of food your brush can't reach, especially between your teeth. Years ago, people often ignored their teeth, only seeing a dentist when they had terrible pain. Today, we have to be **proactive**. Dentists say everyone has to visit them for a **check-up** at least every six months. If your **gums** are **bleeding**, you need to make an appointment quickly; you don't have to wait until the pain is severe. I learned this from my own problem. When I was younger, I rarely used **floss**. I was lucky, so I didn't have to worry about cavities, but my gums became red and **swollen**. My dentist told me I had to completely change my habit. I had to start flossing every day. I needn't have worried about the cost, as my school helped pay for the plan. Now I know that a healthy mouth helps prevent other **sicknesses**, like heart problems. You mustn't ignore these simple steps. Eating less sugar is also most important.





LISTENING

In this discussion, a person named Bassam mentions feeling **sleepy** and tired. It is suggested that he drink water, as he is likely dehydrated. Water is described as the most important thing for the body because it helps blood transport food and oxygen to all body parts. It also regulates body temperature by cooling the body down through sweat. Furthermore, water makes joints **slippery** like oil for easier movement and helps the brain think clearly. Beyond physical movement, water assists the stomach in **breaking down** food and is essential for the **kidneys** to **wash out toxins** and clean the system.



KEY [TARGET] VOCABULARY

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 After running for an hour, I felt very and wanted to take a nap.
 a asleep b sleepy c steeply d deeply
- 2 The heart is a very organ in the human body.
 a discordant b resonant c important d informant
- 3 My neck felt after sleeping in a bad position on the plane.
 a whiff b cliff c stiff d sniff
- 4 Please remember to the coffee pot after breakfast.
 a wash out b cash out c flash out d rash out
- 5 The complex instructions left the new student feeling totally
 a diffused b refused c amused d confused
- 6 The dentist reminded him that flossing was for preventing gum disease.
 a sequential b inconsequential c exponential d essential
- 7 You should at least once a day to remove food particles between your teeth.
 a toss b loss c floss d boss
- 8 Brushing too hard can damage your sensitive
 a drums b gums c sums d chums
- 9 If you eat too much sugar, you might develop painful
 a vanities b abilities c cavities d gravities
- 10 The teacher felt when the student didn't listen to her warning.
 a implored b restored c ignored d adored



11. One of the primary functions of our is to filter waste products and excess water from our blood to create urine.
 (a) minds (b) kidneys (c) tidies (d) brains
12. It is essential to your health and make time for annual check-ups, even when you are very busy.
 (a) authorize (b) prioritize (c) memorize (d) theorize
13. The floor in the hallway was dangerously, so we immediately put up a warning sign.
 (a) crowded (b) slippery (c) noisy (d) narrow
14. After hours in the desert sun with no water, he became severely and needed immediate medical attention.
 (a) hydrated (b) deflated (c) plated (d) dehydrated
15. Our body's large, like the knees and shoulders, are complex structures that allow for a wide range of motion.
 (a) muscles (b) joints (c) bones (d) organs

EXTRA VOCABULARY

16. If your gums are, you should see a dentist immediately.
 (a) feeding (b) leading (c) bleeding (d) seeding
17. He forgot to his teeth before going to bed last night.
 (a) hush (b) flush (c) crush (d) brush
18. The most important step is to drinking sugary sodas.
 (a) avoid (b) applaud (c) erode (d) explode
19. The instructions were completely clear and well
 (a) prescribed (b) subscribed (c) described (d) transcribed
20. A high in summer means you need to drink more water.
 (a) structure (b) temperature (c) vulture (d) sculpture
21. After his long at the gym, he felt dehydrated and tired.
 (a) network (b) check out (c) artwork (d) workout
22. Fluoride in toothpaste helps to cavities and strengthen enamel.
 (a) repent (b) resent (c) present (d) prevent
23. The dentist explained that brushing technique is just as important as brushing regularly to maintain good oral hygiene.
 (a) property (b) improperly (c) sloppily (d) properly



24. During the winter, it's common for people to uncontrollably when they first step outside into the frigid air.
 a quiver b shiver c deliver d river
25. After a long run on a hot day, it's completely to be cover in sweat and feel the need for a long drink of water.
 a factual b unnatural c natural d super-natural
26. His ankle became painfully after the twist, making it difficult for him to put any weight on his foot
 a swollen b stolen c colon d pollen
27. The doctor's primary goal was to the patient that taking medication as prescribed was crucial for recovery.
 a convince b blame c praise d procrastinate
28. The documentary's explained in detail how daily habits, both good and bad, can significantly impact long-term health.
 a curator b creator c narrator d traitor
29. When a piece of food gets between your teeth, dental floss is the most effective tool to dislodge it.
 a truck b struck c tuck d stuck
30. He knew he had to for the expensive dental procedure, so he started saving money each month.
 a say b pray c pay d sway
31. Without proper care, small tooth can grow into large, painful cavities that require major treatment.
 a leases b pleases c creases d pieces
32. She developed the lifelong of drinking a glass of water first thing every morning to kickstart her digestion.
 a custom b habit c debit d career
33. The specialist warned that ignoring the infection could lead to a more condition requiring emergency care.
 a severe b sever c interfere d premiere
34. A key of regular exercise is improved heart strength and a more boost immune system.
 a drawback b benefit c curse d beneficial
35. To stay and alert throughout the workday, he made sure to take short breaks for a walk or some light stretching.
 a genetic b sympathetic c energetic d magnetic



36. The patient's main symptom was a severe in his lower back that made it hard to sit or stand for long.
 a rain b pain c train d crane
37. The dentist always using a toothpaste that contains fluoride to help protect the teeth and gums.
 a commends b amends c recommends d demands
38. When you have a fever, your body's internal rises as part of its defense mechanism against infection.
 a temper b temperature c vulture d sculpture
39. The patient's warning signs were by the first doctor, which unfortunately allowed the condition to worsen.
 a implored b restored c adored d ignored
40. During a check-up, the doctor will listen to the sound of your to ensure it is beating at a regular, healthy rhythm.
 a lungs b heart c stomach d throat
41. It's important for to set a good example for children by practicing healthy eating and exercise habits themselves.
 a infants b adults c insults d exults
42. The protective outer layer of our body, the, can become dry and cracked without proper moisturizing and care.
 a grin b kin c shin d skin
43. The of not managing diabetes can include nerve damage, vision loss, and heart disease.
 a whisks b disks c risks d risky
44. We need to all the old furniture from the room before the new carpet can be installed next week.
 a behoove b disprove c improve d remove
45. Physical activity and are crucial for maintaining flexibility and a healthy range of motion as we age.
 a improvement b movement c achievement d government
46. After biting into the hard candy, she was worried she might have cracked a
 a booth b sleuth c truth d tooth
47. He scheduled a follow-up for six months to monitor the healing process after his minor surgery.
 a disappointment b appointment c anointment d disappointment



48. The human is an incredibly complex organ responsible for thought, memory, and controlling bodily functions.
 (a) drain (b) grain (c) brain (d) train
49. She used a gentle, circular to clean the delicate fabric of the antique dress.
 (a) mush (b) flush (c) brush (d) rush
50. The study searched how various common, from the flu to chronic conditions, impact workplace productivity.
 (a) darkness (b) sicknesses (c) thicknesses (d) laziness
51. To maintain strong bones and teeth, water companies add, to the public drinking water supply.
 (a) dioxide (b) fluoride (c) oxygen (d) sugar
52. Good communication is, for a successful team, ensuring everyone understands their roles and goals.
 (a) exponential (b) residential (c) preferential (d) essential
53. After a tiring, it's important to cool down and stretch to help your muscles recover properly.
 (a) network (b) workout (c) artwork (d) interview
54. Wearing a helmet is the best way to prevent a head injury while riding a bicycle or motorcycle.
 (a) sphere (b) severe (c) revere (d) interfere
55. Chronic stress can have a effect on both your mental well-being and your physical health over time.
 (a) pleasant (b) harmless (c) terrible (d) beneficial

EXPRESSIONS, COLLOCATIONS AND PREPOSITIONS

56. After the children finished the art project, they left the kitchen table covered in glue, glitter, and paint, so the parents had to completely up the mess before dinner.
 (a) wash (b) mixed (c) clean (d) stuck
57. The hiking guide emphasized the importance of being prepared, reminding everyone to out and refill their water bottles at every stream crossing.
 (a) wash (b) pay (c) check (d) lead
58. Trust and open communication are for a healthy and lasting relationship, as they build mutual respect and understanding.
 (a) benefit (b) essential (c) waiting (d) stuck



59 During the routine-up, the mechanic discovered a small but critical crack in the engine.

- a check b clean c taking d wash

60 To be considered for the advanced scholarship program, applicants must have least three years of academic excellence.

- a at b about c to d for

61 The primary benefit maintaining a balanced budget is financial peace of mind, which reduces stress and allows you to plan for future goals.

- a for b out c between d of

SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS

62 When you feel very sleepy after a long day, you just want to close your eyes and rest. The synonyms for the underlined word are

- a tired b drowsy c excited d energetic e alert

63 After sitting at the desk for eight hours, his neck and shoulders felt stiff and sore. The synonyms for the underlined word are

- a rigid b supple c flexible d tense e loose

64 The complicated map and unclear signs left the tourists feeling completely confused. The synonyms for the underlined word are

- a clear b disoriented c bewildered d certain e lucid

65 Honesty is an essential part of building a strong and trusting friendship. The synonyms for the underlined word are

- a crucial b nonessential c optional d unimportant e necessary

66 To maintain good oral health, you should visit the dentist regularly, every six months. The synonyms for the underlined word are

- a consistently b routinely c irregularly d sporadically e occasionally

67 His ankle became swollen and painful after he tripped and twisted it on the stairs. The synonyms for the underlined word are

- a inflamed b shrunken c reduced d puffed up e deflated

68 Making a good first impression is important when you are interviewing for a new job. The synonyms for the underlined word are

- a significant b vital c unimportant d trivial e insignificant



GRAMMAR

Past habits

عادات في الماضي



تستخدم Used to للتعبير عن عادة في الماضي وأقلعنا عنها في الحاضر

used to + مصدر

always + فعل ماضي

no longer + فعل مضارع

don't /doesn't (any longer - any more)

It washabit to + مصدر

EX Dina used to play (always played) in the street but now she doesn't .

EX I used to get my clothes dirty , but now I don't .

EX She used to be active , but now she isn't .

في النفي

didn't use to + مصدر

أو

never used to + inf

EX I didn't use to smoke , but now I do .

EX She never used to clean her room but now she does .

في الإستفهام :

Use to + مصدر + فاعل + did + أداة الإستفهام ؟

EX What did you use to do when you were a child ?

في المجهول :

used to be + p.p

EX I used to study English late at night . → English used to be studied .



للتعبير عن التعود على شيء في الماضي و أصبح شيء مألوف في الماضي نستخدم :

got (became) used to + v.ing / اسم	was / were used to+ v.ing
	was / were accustomed to + v.ing / اسم
	was / were in the habit of + v.ing

EX She was used to sleeping in the afternoon .

EX She accustomed to sleeping in the afternoon.

EX He got used to junk food .

للتعبير عن عادة في الحاضر نستخدم :

am / is / are / get / become used to + v.ing / اسم =	always + فعل مضارع
	is / are accustomed to + v.ing / اسم
	am / is / are in the habit of + v.ing

EX She is used to sleeping in the afternoon . She is in the habit of sleeping in the afternoon.

تستخدم كل من (would + inf) و (used to + inf) . للتعبير عن عادات وأحداث متكررة في الماضي

EX When I was young, I used to play tennis. ✓

EX When I was young, I would play tennis. ✓

تستخدم (used to + inf) و ليس (would + inf) لوصف حالة في الماضي (مع الافعال التقريرية)

لا تستخدم مع افعال مثل (have – be – look)

EX When I was young, I used to have short hair. ✓

EX When I was young, I would have short hair. ✗

بتعبير يدل على الماضي (used to + inf) سواء أتى معها ظرف زمني أو لا فهي تشير للماضي .

يفضل أن تسبق (would + inf) الماضي ولكن لا تستخدم مع افعال مثل
(have – be – look – feel – understand)

EX I used to visit my grandma.

EX When I was young, I used to visit my grandma.



لا تستخدم (used to + inf) و (would + inf) عند تحديد علامة الماضي في الجملة أو ذكر العدد .

EX They went there three times. (not used to ✗/ would ✗)

EX He moved to London in 2007. (not used to ✗/ would ✗)

تستخدم (used to + inf) وليس (would + inf) للتعبير عن موقف دائم أو حالة ثابتة.

EX When I was young, I **used to** live in Giza . ✓

EX When I was young, I **would** live in Giza. ✗

تأتي ظروف التكرار تستخدم (always , often , sometimes ,) قبل أو بعد (used to) ولكنها تأتي بعد (would) مثل :

EX When I was young, I **always used to** play tennis . ✓

EX When I was young, I **used always to** play tennis. ✓

EX When I was young, I **would always** play tennis. ✓

EX When I was young, I **always would** play tennis. ✗

تستخدم (be used to / for) في المبني للمجهول :



فاعل غير عاقل + is are + used to + inf

فاعل غير عاقل + is are + used + for + ing

بمعني يستخدم في

EX A thermometer is used to measure temperature .

EX A thermometer is used for measuring temperature .

EXERCISE ON GRAMMAR

1 I to help my grandmother feed the birds when I was a teenager.

- a) used b) am used c) was used d) use

2 My grandfather lessons easily when he was a child.

- a) had understood b) would understand c) used to understand d) was understanding

3 Marim live in a small house when she was young .

- a) used b) used to c) didn't used d) use to

4 I to bring my mother a present every 21st of March before she died in 2010 .

- a) used b) get used c) was used d) use



- 5 My father to go to work by car but now he does .
 (a) didn't use (b) used (c) isn't used (d) uses
- 6 I used to play badminton I was younger.
 (a) since (b) while (c) when (d) during
- 7 Did your grandfather in a bank when he was younger?
 (a) use to work (b) used no work (c) work (d) working
- 8 She goes shopping every day now, but she go before .
 (a) didn't use (b) didn't use to (c) didn't used (d) never use to
- 9 She living in such hot weather, she came from Scotland .
 (a) didn't used (b) uses to (c) isn't used to (d) didn't use to
- 10 The boys rubbish in the school grounds, but now they keep the school grounds clean .
 (a) leave (b) used to leave (c) were leaving (d) didn't use to leave
- 11 In the past, the sea as warm as it is today, matters are getting worse nowadays.
 (a) wouldn't be (b) used to being (c) doesn't use to leave (d) didn't use to be
- 12 We did not use to like talent shows on TV, but now, we them twice a week.
 (a) do not watch (b) watched (c) watch (d) were watching
- 13 In the past, all the reef beautifully colored coral.
 (a) used to have (b) use to have (c) don't use to have (d) have
- 14 Mr Rashad gets used to in that restaurant. Its food tastes nice.
 (a) eating (b) be eating (c) have eaten (d) eat
- 15 When I joined that club, I hated it but later I to it .
 (a) use (b) would use (c) am used (d) got used
- 16 There a cinema here. Now, there is a school.
 (a) Use to be (b) didn't use to be (c) used to (d) used to be
- 17 He didn't use to eat beans, but now, he
 (a) did (b) does (c) is (d) was
- 18 He didn't use to be a heavy smoker, but now, he
 (a) doesn't (b) is (c) hasn't (d) isn't
- 19 Rania used to be thin, but now, she
 (a) doesn't (b) is (c) hasn't (d) isn't
- 20 My father no longer smokes as he
 (a) Used to be (b) used to have (c) used to (d) is used to



- 21 When I was young, I have tea after meals .
 a was used to b would c used to d got used to
- 22 He used to live in Italy, but he lives there .
 a no longer b is used to c any longer d used to
- 23 I used to play tennis a lot, but I don't play
 a no longer b any more c some more d some time
- 24 When we were young, mum accompany us to bed and read us a bedtime story.
 a didn't used to b wasn't used to c was used to d would
- 25 My memory isn't as good as it
 a used to be b used to do c used d used for
- 26 Did he to the cold weather when he was in Scotland ?
 a used b use c uses d get used
- 27 Long ago, I go fishing with my grandfather in summer. Which can best complete the statement?
 a used to b would c always d a&b
- 28 When I was young, I have strong muscles, but now, I don't .
 a used to b didn't use to c wouldn't d would
- 29 Which of these sentences is grammatically correct and talks about a past habit?
 a He used always to smoke.
 b She would always help me with the housework.
 c When I was young, I got lost in the city.
 d Cars are used to travel easily.
- 30 In the past, my ancestors a lot of cows and sheep on their farmland.
 a use to have b are used to have
 c used to have d used to be having
- 31 She used to live in Cairo, but now, she in Aswan.
 a lived b is living c lives d live
- 32 When we were young, our mother delicious meals every day.
 a would cook b is used to cooking
 c used to cook d got used to cook
- 33 Don't worry! You will soon used to living here .
 a grow b plant c get d become
- 34 A month ago, I three weddings.
 a used to attend b got used to attend
 c was used to attend d attended



- 35 The European cold weather.
 a has used to b are used to c used to d didn't use to
- 36 There used to be a cinema in our street. Now a cinema in our street.
 a there's b we never had c we have d we don't have
- 37 Speaking English is difficult but I am sure I to it .
 a will get used b will get use c will use d used
- 38 used to be a large villa here.
 a Their b Those c there d there's
- 39 It was habit to stay up late at night.
 a his b he c Ali d himself
- 40 a fixed habit, I used to visit my grandparents once a week before their death.
 a As b for c by d to
- 41 A: to going by train? B: Yes, I do travel by train every day.
 a Have you used b Did you use c Do you use d Are you used
- 42 No longer he smoke as he used to .
 a is b does c did d will
- 43 One of the following sentences is correct in structure. Which one is it .
 a I would be fat, but now I am thin
 b I was used to be fat but now I am thin
 c I used to be fat, but now I am thin
 d I was in the habit of be fat, but now I am thin
- 44 I used to like koshari. This means I
 a still like koshari b didn't like koshari at all
 c never liked koshari d don't like koshari any more
- 45 I in a small village, but I moved to live in Alexandria when I joined university.
 a am living b used to live c would live d will live
- 46 When I was little, I always want to visit every room in the museum because I found everything so interesting. .
 a didn't used to b would c wouldn't d will

OPERATE YOUR MIND

تفعل عقلك



- 47 When I first moved to London, I In a big city.
 a didn't use to live b used to live
 c quickly got used to living d am not used to living



- 48 People used to dress formally..... .
 a) those days b) these days c) old days d) in his day
- 49 Remas didn't like English food at first, but now she it.
 a) didn't use to it b) used to
 c) uses to d) has got used to it
- 50 I don't think I'll ever with chopsticks.
 a) use to eat b) used to eat
 c) get used to eating d) has got used to eating
- 51 cars are cheaper and more suitable for people with limited budgets .
 a) Use b) Using c) Used d) Usage

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets to give the same meaning:

- 1 As a boy, I always played football with my friends after school. (used)
- 2 When I was young, I played football in the park after school. (used)
- 3 During summer vacations, we visited our grandparents in the countryside. (would)
- 4 I often watched cartoons on TV when I was a child. (would)
- 5 My father worked in the city when he was younger. (used)
- 6 We always went to the beach during our holidays. (would)
- 7 Adam used to tea every morning before going to work. (Adam's)
- 8 My friends and I visited the library every Saturday. (would)
- 9 When we were kids, we didn't eat fast food. (used)
- 10 I used to play the piano every evening when I was a child. (playing)
- 11 We no longer have picnics by the river. (used to)
- 12 I used to stay up late to finish my homework. (habit)
- 13 She went to the gym three times a week last year. (go)
- 14 Every weekend, we visited the museum with our teacher. (would)
- 15 My parents helped me with my homework. (no longer)
- 16 It was Mustafa's habit to get up early. (used)



Part two: Lessons 3 & 4

KEY [TARGET] VOCABULARY

Farghally

mental attitude (n)	نَزْعَة عَقْلِيَّة / وَضْعِيَّة ذَهْنِيَّة	stress(n)	تَوَثَّر / إِجْهَاد
immune system(n)	جهاز المَناعة	lifespan(n)	عُمُر / مُدَّة الحَيَاة
immunize(v)	يُحصن	immunity(n)	المناعة
energetic (adj)	نَشِيط / حَيَوِي	mental(adj)	عقلي
priority(n)	أولويه	maintain(v)	يُحافظ على / يصون

DEFINITIONS:

mental attitude	نَزْعَة عَقْلِيَّة / وَضْعِيَّة ذَهْنِيَّة	a way of thinking and feeling (an "attitude") connected with the mind and thinking (mental).
stress	تَوَثَّر / إِجْهَاد	pressure or worry caused by problems in somebody's life or by having too much to do.
lifespan	عُمُر / مُدَّة الحَيَاة	the length of time that something is likely to live, continue, or function.
immune system	جهاز المَناعة	the system in your body that produces substances to help it fight against infection and disease.
energetic	نَشِيط / حَيَوِي	having or needing a lot of energy and enthusiasm.

EXTRA IMPORTANT VOC

ability (n)	قُدْرَة، مَقْدِرَة	article (n)	مَقَال	attitude (n)	وَضْعِيَّة، نَزْعَة
breed (v)	يَرْبِي حيوان	cheer (v/n)	يُشَجِّع / تَشْجِيع	choices (n)	اِخْتِيَارَات
count (v)	يَعُدُّ، يُحَسِّب	focus (n/v)	تَرْكِيز / يَرْكُز	function (n/v)	وَضِيفَة / يَعْمَل
gratitude (n)	اِفْتِنَان، شُكْر	habit (n)	عَادَة	hydration (n)	تَرْطِيب
illness (n)	مَرَض	mood (n)	مِزَاج	muscles (n)	عَضَلَات
necessity (n)	ضَرُورَة	negative (adj)	سَلْبِي	obligation (n)	وَاجِب، التِّزَام
optimists (n)	مُتَفَائِلُون	positive (adj)	إِيجَابِي	power (n)	قُوَّة
practice (n/v)	مُمَارَسَة / يُمَارِس	recover (v)	يَشْفَى، يَتَعافى	research (n)	بَحْث
self-talk (n)	حَدِيث النَفْس	seriously (adv)	بِجَدِّيَّة	sick (adj)	مَرِيض



skip(v)	يَتَخَطَّى	fancy pills	باهظة الثمن	stretching	الأطالة
sunny (adj)	شَمْسِيّ	support (n/v)	دَعْم / يَدْعِم	surgery (n)	جِزَاحَة
weaken (v)	يُضْعِف	waste removal	إِزَالَة مُخَلَّفَات		
changing (adj/v)	مُتَغَيِّر / يَتَغَيَّر	connected (adj)	مُتَّصِل، مُرْتَبِط		
hard (adj/adv)	صَعْب / بَجْد	nutrients (n)	مُغَذِّيات، عَنَاصِر غِذَائِيَّة		
overnight (adv/adj)	لَيْلًا / بَلِيلَةً وَاحِدَةً				

SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS

Word

Positive

إِيجَابِيّ

Hard

صَعْب

Optimists

مُتَفَائِلُون

Obligation

وَاجِب

Hydration

تَرْطِيب

Weaken

يُضْعِف

Slippery

زَلَق

Seriously

بَجْدِيَّة

Energetic

نَشِيط

Synonyms

optimistic, constructive, favorable

difficult, tough, challenging

hopefuls, positive thinkers

duty, responsibility, commitment

fluid intake, moisturizing

undermine, diminish, reduce

slick, greasy, icy

earnestly, gravely, intently

lively, , active

Antonyms

negative, pessimistic, adverse
سَلْبِيّ، مُتَشَائِم، عَكْسِيّeasy, simple, effortless
سَهْل، بَسِيط، بِسْهُولَةpessimists, doubters
مُتَشَائِمُون، شَاكُونoption, choice, freedom
اِخْتِيَار، حُرِّيَّةdehydration, dryness
جَفَاف، تَجْفِيفstrengthen, fortify, boost
يَقْوِي، يُعَزِّز، يَرْفَعrough, grippy, adhesive
خَشِن، قَابِض، لَازِقlightly, jokingly, frivolously
ضَعِيف، عَاجِزlethargic, sluggish, inactive
خَامِل، كَسْلَان، غَيْر نَشِيط



EXPRESSIONS, COLLOCATIONS AND PREPOSITIONS

get well

يشقى / تشقى

focus on

يركز على

kind of

نوع من

good for

جيد لـ

write down

يدون / يكتب

Positive self-talk

حديث نفس إيجابي

cheer yourself on

تشجع نفسك

give three tips on

يقدم ثلاث نصائح عن

simple daily choices are what count!

الاختيارات البسيطة اليومية هي التي تحسب!

clean out

ينظف / يفرغ

enough to

كاف لـ

maintaining healthy choices

الحفاظ على اختيارات صحية

skip breakfast

يتخطى / يتجاهل وجبة الإفطار

advice on

نصيحة عن

force themselves out of bed

يجبرون أنفسهم على النهوض من السرير

LANGUAGE NOTES

immune system , immunity & diplomatic immunity

immune system

جهاز المناعة

immunity

مناعة

diplomatic immunity

حصانة دبلوماسية

affect & effect

affect

يؤثر على

EX Smoking affects our health badly = (impact / influence)

effect

تأثير

EX Smoking has a bad effect / impact on our health (لا حظ استخدام on)

Shaimaa Farghally

Shaimaa Farghally



Brain & Mind

Brain

(المخ / الدماغ) (عضو جسدي)

يستخدم عندما نتحدث عن التفكير من الناحية العلمية أو الطبية ، الذاكرة ، الأعصاب ، الإصابات

EX

The brain controls all the functions of the human body.

Mind

العقل / الذهن

يستخدم عندما نتحدث الأفكار ، المشاعر ، الوعي ، الرأي ، الخيال

EX

A calm mind helps students make better decisions.

EX

He couldn't focus because his mind was full of worries.

READING

The Power of Positive Thinking

Positive thinking is more than just feeling happy; it is a mental **attitude** where you **focus on** good and helpful things, even when times are hard. **Research** shows that this kind of thinking is not just good for your mood—it can seriously affect your health. When you think **positively**, your body has less stress because you worry less. High **stress** can weaken your **immune system**, making you sick easily. Positive thinking helps keep your immune system strong. Studies show that **optimists** often have better heart health and a longer **lifespan**. They also recover faster from illness or **surgery**. We all have negative thoughts sometimes, but we can change this habit. Here are some simple ways to think more positively and live healthily:



Practice **Gratitude**: Every night, write down three good things that happened that day. They can be small things, like a sunny morning or a nice chat with a friend. Use Positive **Self-Talk**: Change "I can't do this" to "I can try this." Be your own best friend and **cheer** yourself **on**. Stay Connected: Spend time with people who make you feel happy and energetic. Good friends support your positive view of life. By practicing these simple ideas, you can use the power of your mind to live a happier and healthier life.

Shaimaa Farghally



LISTENING

Lesson 3

A speaker shares how they improved their life by changing their **routine**; they used to force themselves out of bed, feel tired, and **skip** breakfast, but now they wake up early and eat well. While people did not always **prioritize** it, health experts now agree that 8 hours of sleep is necessary for recovery. Another individual admits to previously ignoring their health by eating too much fast food, which they describe as a "bad habit" and a "big mistake". Instead of relying on expensive "**fancy pills**," they now focus on basic habits such as walking every day and **stretching** in the morning to stay active. The speakers conclude by agreeing to encourage each other when **maintaining** these healthy **choices** feels difficult.



KEY VOCABULARY EXERCISES

- 1 A positive mental can help you overcome challenges and see opportunities instead of obstacles.
 a) gratitude b) latitude c) aptitude d) attitude
- 2 Too much from work and personal life can lead to serious health problems like high blood pressure.
 a) dress b) caress c) stress d) compress
- 3 Scientists are studying how healthy habits can extend the human beyond current averages.
 a) fan b) lifespan c) snowman d) caravan
- 4 Your system is your body's natural defense army against viruses and bacteria.
 a) immune b) immunize c) immunization d) immunity
- 5 After a full night's sleep and a healthy breakfast, the children were and ready for the school day.
 a) generic b) energetic c) phonetic d) pathetic
- 6 Managing daily is crucial for maintaining both mental and physical well-being.
 a) stressed b) stress c) press d) stressing
- 7 The Galapagos tortoise has an exceptionally long, often living over 100 years.
 a) lifespan b) off span c) wingspan d) outspan

EXTRA VOCABULARY

- 8 Having the to solve complex problems is a key skill for a successful engineer.
 a) debility b) stability c) ability d) agility
- 9 She wrote an interesting about climate change for the school magazine.
 a) particle b) article c) vehicle d) cubicle



- 10 The champion racehorse was carefully for speed and endurance.
 a led b fed c said d bred
- 11 The weather patterns are making it hard for farmers to plan their crops.
 a ranging b changing c estranging d exchanging
- 12 Her friends tried to her up after she lost the competition.
 a fear b cheer c sneer d clear
- 13 The healthy you make today will benefit your future self.
 a voices b choices c noises d sounds
- 14 Feeling to a community is important for your mental well-being.
 a disconnected b connected c protected d rejected
- 15 Every small act of kindness towards making the world a better place.
 a mount b fount c count d amount
- 16 You need to on your studies if you want to pass the final exam.
 a locust b hocus c focus d crocus
- 17 The main of the heart is to pump blood throughout the body.
 a obstacle b unction c function d problem
- 18 Expressing for what you have can greatly increase your happiness.
 a gratitude b altitude c latitude d fortitude
- 19 Proper is crucial for athletes to perform at their best.
 a hydration b dehydration c gradation d predation
- 20 A serious kept him in bed for over a week.
 a wellness b illness c stillness d chillness
- 21 Listening to music can improve your and help you relax.
 a food b mood c brood d shrewd
- 22 Regular exercise strengthens your and improves your posture.
 a kidneys b eyes c muscles d lungs
- 23 Clean drinking water is a basic for human survival.
 a density b capacity c necessity d necessary
- 24 Try to avoid thoughts, as they can increase your stress and anxiety.
 a positive b negative c tentative d sedative
- 25 Fruits and vegetables are full of essential that your body needs.
 a nutrients b junk c toxins d waste



26. Paying taxes is a legal for every working citizen.
 a choice b obligation c hobby d suggestion
27. believe that good things are likely to happen in the future.
 a Pessimists b Optimists c Alarmists d Novelists
28. Success rarely happens ; it usually requires years of effort.
 a overnight b daylight c forthright d contrite
29. Maintaining a outlook can help you overcome many challenges in life.
 a negative b positive c sensitive d massive
30. The of regular exercise is a stronger heart and clearer mind.
 a tower b shadow c energy d power
31. It took several weeks for her to fully from the flu.
 a uncover b cover c recover d discover
32. Using positive can help you manage stress and build confidence.
 a side-walk b self-talk c cross-talk d beanstalk
33. You should take your health and see a doctor about that persistent cough.
 a curiously b furiously c seriously d variously
34. Be careful on the stairs—they become when they are wet.
 a hard b rough c slippery d heavy
35. She received a lot of emotional from her family during her recovery.
 a import b pressure c support d damage
36. The patient needed to repair the damaged ligament الرباط in his knee.
 a surgery b forgery c surgeon d surge
37. A poor diet and lack of exercise can your body's defenses over time.
 a deepen b weaken c reawaken d waken
38. The liver works to filter from your bloodstream.
 a toxins b nutrients c vitamins d water
39. Kidneys are vital organs for the removal of waste from the body.
 a energy b nutrients c waste d waist
40. She tried to her friend by reminding her of past successes.
 a fear b cheer c sneer d clear
41. Feeling can lead to headaches and fatigue, so drink plenty of water.
 a hydrated b dehydrated c graduated d separated



EXPRESSIONS, COLLOCATIONS AND PREPOSITIONS

42. Before the trip, we need to clean the car to make room for our luggage.
 a for b into c out d down
43. To be successful, you must focus your main goals and not get distracted.
 a in b on c at d to
44. Vegetables are very good your overall health and digestion.
 a on b for c to d at
45. Please write the main points of the lecture before you forget them.
 a up b out c down d off
46. Positive Self-Talk is a powerful way to cheer yourself during difficult times.
 a up b on c out d off
47. The coach will give three tips how to improve your serve in tennis.
 a to b at c on d in
48. She gave me great advice how to prepare for the job interview.
 a on b to c for d at
49. Getting eight hours of sleep is good both your physical and mental recovery.
 a to b for c at d on
50. It's important to focus the solution, not just the problem.
 a at b to c on d in

SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS

51. A positive outlook on life can help you see solutions instead of problems.
 The synonyms for "positive" are
 a optimistic b adverse c negative d pessimistic e favorable
52. Finding a solution to the puzzle was hard and took all afternoon.
 The synonyms for "hard" are
 a difficult b effortless c easy d simple e challenging
53. Filing taxes is a legal obligation for every citizen. The synonyms for "obligation" are
 a duty b freedom c option d choice e commitment
54. Lack of exercise can weaken your muscles over time . The antonyms for "weaken" are
 a undermine b diminish c strengthen d fortify e reduce



55 Be careful—the floor is wet and very slippery. The opposites for "slippery" are

- a slick b greasy c rough d grippy e icy

56 The doctor spoke seriously about the risks of not following the treatment plan. The antonyms for "seriously" are

- a earnestly b gravely c lightly d jokingly e intently

57 After a good night's sleep, the children were energetic and ready to play. The synonyms for "energetic" are

- a lively b inactive c lethargic d sluggish e active

WRITING SKILLS

نصيحة كتابة : مقال نصائح صحية

What is a health advice article?

ما هو مقال النصائح الصحية؟

It is an article that gives readers practical tips to improve their health. It often includes examples or details to make the advice clear and easy to follow.

هو مقال يقدم نصائح عملية تساعد القارئ على تحسين صحته، وغالبًا يحتوي على أمثلة أو تفاصيل لتوضيح النصائح وجعلها سهلة التطبيق.

Introduction

المقدمة

It attracts the reader's attention and clearly introduces the topic. It usually includes a hook, a topic sentence, and a thesis statement.

المقدمة تجذب انتباه القارئ وتعرض موضوع المقال بوضوح. غالبًا تتكوّن من جملة تشويقية، وجملة موضوع، وفكرة رئيسية.

Body Paragraph

فقرة الموضوع

It gives clear health tips with explanations. It focuses on one tip in detail and explains why it is important.

الفقرة الرئيسية تقدّم نصيحة صحية واضحة مع شرحها. تركز على نصيحة واحدة بالتفصيل وتوضّح أهميتها.

Conclusion

الخاتمة

It summarizes the main points and adds a final thought or encouragement to the reader.

الخاتمة تلخّص الأفكار الرئيسية وتضيف فكرة أخيرة أو تشجيعًا للقارئ.



EXERCISES ON WRITING SKILLS

1. What is the main purpose of a health advice article?
 - a To tell a story
 - b To entertain readers
 - c To give practical tips to improve health
 - d To describe a place
2. A health advice article often includes examples in order to
 - a make the article longer
 - b show personal opinions
 - c confuse the reader
 - d help readers understand and follow the advice
3. Which part of the article attracts the reader's attention first?
 - a Introduction
 - b Body paragraph
 - c Conclusion
 - d Title
4. The introduction usually includes
 - a rules and instructions only
 - b tips without explanation
 - c a hook, a topic sentence, and a thesis
 - d questions and answers
5. The main role of the body paragraph is to
 - a give clear health tips with explanations
 - b introduce the topic
 - c summarize the article
 - d encourage the reader only
6. In a health advice article, the body paragraph focuses on
 - a many tips without detail
 - b personal stories
 - c one health tip explained in detail
 - d the writer's feelings
7. Why is it important to explain the health tip in the body paragraph?
 - a To make the article shorter
 - b To show why the tip is important
 - c To show the writer's style
 - d To repeat the introduction
8. What is the main function of the conclusion?
 - a To give new advice
 - b To summarize main points and encourage the reader
 - c To explain examples
 - d To introduce the topic
9. Which sentence best fits a conclusion?
 - a In conclusion, following these tips can help you live a healthier life.
 - b There are many health problems today.
 - c Eating well is important for your body.
 - d When I was young, I ignored health advice.



10 Which structure is correct for a health advice article?

- a Conclusion → Introduction → Body
- b Body → Conclusion → Introduction
- c Introduction → Body Paragraph → Conclusion
- d Title → Conclusion → Body

SKILLS CORNER

Read the passage , then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Mona had just finished school when she picked up her bag and walked out of the classroom. On her way home, she opened the bag to take her keys but found a book she had never seen before. Confused, she checked the notebook and realized it wasn't her handwriting. She had taken the wrong bag by mistake! Mona turned around quickly and rushed back to school without wasting any time. In the corridor, she saw her classmate Hana looking worried and upset. "I think I have your bag," Mona said kindly.

Hana looked relieved and smiled brightly. They exchanged bags and laughed about the mix-up. Later that day, Hana sent Mona a thank-you message for being honest, helpful, and quick to act. That evening, Mona told her parents what had happened and how she fixed the situation. Her father smiled and said, "That's how friendship begins ;with small honest acts that show we care about others." Mona smiled and felt proud. She thought it was nice to do the right thing, even if it seemed small or simple.

That day, she learned that paying attention and being responsible could help others and even create moments of connection. These small actions, even if unnoticed by many, have great meaning. Mona knew she had done the right thing and felt closer to her classmate. She also realized that one small mistake can sometimes lead to something positive, like making a new friend or learning a valuable life lesson.

1 What did Mona realize on her way home ?

- a She lost her bag
- b She took the wrong bag
- c She forgot her homework
- d She had no keys

2 How did she notice the mistake ?

- a She saw Hana's name
- b She couldn't find her phone
- c She found a different book
- d The bag was empty

3 What did Mona do next?

- a Called her parents
- b Went home
- c Returned to school
- d Gave the bag to a teacher

4 How did Hana feel when she saw Mona ?

- a Angry
- b Relieved
- c Confused
- d Sad



5 What message did Hana send later ?

- a She was angry
b A thank-you note
c She wanted to report it
d A photo of the bag

6 What did Mona's father say ?

- a "You should focus more."
b "Never trust others."
c "This is how friendship begins."
d "Be careful next time."

7 What did Mona learn ?

- a Never carry bags
b Being honest creates moments of connection
c Don't return things
d Mistakes are okay

TRANSLATION

Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 Our forests are considered one of the greatest resources on Earth. We can protect the environment and provide fresh air by planting more trees and preserving wildlife.

- a تعد غاباتنا واحدة من أعظم الموارد على الأرض. يمكننا حماية البيئة وتوفير الهواء النقي من خلال زراعة القليل من الأشجار والحفاظ على الحياة البرية.
b تعد غاباتنا واحدة من أعظم الموارد المائية العذبة على الأرض. يمكننا حماية البيئة وتوفير الهواء النقي من خلال زراعة المزيد من الأشجار والحفاظ على الحياة البرية.
c تعد غاباتنا واحدة من أعظم الموارد على الأرض. يمكننا حماية البيئة وتوفير الهواء النقي من خلال زراعة المزيد من الأشجار والحفاظ على الحياة البرية.
d تعد غاباتنا واحدة من أعظم الموارد على الأرض. يمكننا حماية البيئة وتوفير الهواء النقي من خلال زراعة الأشجار والحفاظ على الحياة البرية.

2 Charities have an undeniable role in providing help and support for the poor and needy, so we should boost them financially .

- a تلعب المؤسسات الخيرية دورا غير أساسي في تقديم المساعدة للفقراء و المحتاجين لذلك يجب علينا أن ندعمها ماديا.
b تلعب المؤسسات الخيرية دورا لا ينكر في تقديم المساعدة للفقراء و المحتاجين لذلك يجب علينا أن ندعمها ماديا.
c تلعب المؤسسات الحكومية دورا لا ينكر في تقديم المساعدة للفقراء و المحتاجين لذلك يجب علينا أن ندعمها ماديا .
d تلعب المؤسسات الخيرية دورا لا ينكر في توفير المساعدة للفقراء و المحتاجين لذلك يجب علينا أن ندعمها ماديا.



Choose the correct English translation:

Shaimaa Farghally

إن التخطيط للمستقبل من سمات الدول المتقدمة والأفراد الناجحين. وهذا يحتاج الى العمل الجاد لتحقيق الأهداف التى تعود بالنفع على المجتمعات.

3

- a Planning for the future is one of the qualities of developing countries and successful individuals. This inquires hard work to achieve the goals which benefit societies.
- b Planning for the future is one of the qualities of developed countries and successful individuals. This inquires hard work to achieve the goals which benefit societies.
- c Planning for the future is one of the quantities of developing countries and successful individuals. This inquires hard work to achieve the goals which benefit societies.
- d Planning for the future is one of the qualities of developed countries and successful individuals. This requires hard work to achieve the goals which benefit societies.

الصحة كنز وهى أغلى ثروة يمتلكها الإنسان. يجب أن يعتنى كل شخص بجسمه من خلال التغذية السليمة والرياضة المنتظمة.

4

- a Health is a treasure and the most valuable wealth a man can possess. One mustn't take care of their body through proper nutrition and regular exercise.
- b Health is a treasure and the most valuable wealth a man can possess. One must take care of their body through proper nutrition and regular exercise.
- c Health is a treasure and the least valuable wealth a man can possess. One must take care of their body through proper nutrition and regular exercise.
- d Health is a treasure and the most valuable wealth a man can ignore. One must take care of their body through proper nutrition and regular exercise.

Shaimaa Farghally

Shaimaa Farghally

Shaimaa Farghally



TEST ON UNIT 11

A. Vocabulary and Structures (14 Marks)

1 Choose the Two (2) correct answers out of the Five (5) options given: (2 Marks)

1 When you feel very sleepy after a long day, you just want to close your eyes and rest. The synonyms for this word are

- a tired b drowsy c excited d energetic e alert

2 The doctor spoke seriously about the risks of not following the treatment plan. The antonyms for "seriously" are

- a earnestly b gravely c lightly d jokingly e intently

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (12 Marks)

1 A medical approach, such as getting vaccinated, is far better than treating an illness after it occurs.

- a representative b argumentative c preventative d vegetative

2 The goal of public health campaigns is to the spread of contagious diseases through education and vaccination.

- a allow b present c prevent d invent

3 The fitness trainer emphasized that full-body, like squats and push-ups, are more effective than isolated exercises.

- a monuments b instruments c movements d incitements

4 A common symptom of the flu is to and feel cold, even when you are bundled up under blankets.

- a quiver b shiver c deliver d giver

5 It is important to use a soft-bristled to avoid damaging your gums and tooth enamel while cleaning.

- a rush b brush c hush d crush

6 Healthy allow you to walk, run, and move freely without discomfort or stiffness.

- a grounds b joints c points d mounts

7 She live in Cairo when she was young.

- a would to b would c used to d use to

8 After several months abroad, Mr R'afat got used to to a completely different cultural environment.

- a adapt b adapting c have adapted d be adapting



- 9 a hospital here.
- a There used to be b There use to be
c Their used to be d It used to be
- 10 He no longer gets up early as he
- a is used to b used to c used to be d used to have
- 11 What is the main purpose of a health advice article?
- a To entertain b To tell a story
c To give practical tips to improve health d To describe a place
- 12 Which part summarizes the main ideas and motivates the reader?
- a Introduction b Body Paragraph c Conclusion d Title

B. Reading (7 Marks)

3 Read the following passage, then answer the question:

Dreams have interested, puzzled, and even frightened people. They thought that dreams always came true, and that they came from something outside the person dreaming. Since the end of the 19th century, physicians, psychologists and scientists have been studying dreams. Although they still have much to learn, they think that dreams are created by the dreamer himself. Most persons have dreams in which their dearest wish is granted or in which they become somebody they would like to be. These are wish-fulfilling dreams. They occasionally dream they are being chased by robbers, or are in danger from fire or flood. These frightening dreams are called nightmares. People usually have nightmares when they are upset about something. Studies about the causes of dreams show many reasons. For example, changes in the brain occur during sleep, and these are probably related to dreaming. A dreamer's health affects his dreams. A person who is ill will have different dreams from those of one who is well. If a person is hungry, cold or tired, his dreams may include these feelings. In addition, a large part of any dream comes from the events, the persons or situations the dreamer met during the day. The feelings of happiness or disappointment which came out in dreams were probably in the dreamer before. All the dream does is to give them an outlet.

- 1 People in the past thought that dreams
- a were created by the dreamer himself
b came from something outside the person
c caused by changes occurred in the brain
d came from the events of the day before
- 2 Scientists still have much to learn about dreams. This shows they have learnt
- a nothing b too much c a little d everything



3 Nightmares are dreams.

- a good b happy c difficult d horrible

4 means sad or unhappy.

- a upset b frightened c tired d interested

5 When you have a wish-fulfilling dream, this means that

- a you are in danger b you are hungry or cold
c you hope your wish to become true d you are being chased

6 According to the passage, our dreams are affected by

- a our health
b the situations or persons we met during the day
c our feelings
d all the reasons mentioned before

7 The underlined word "them" in the last line refers to

- a feelings of happiness or disappointment b the dreamers
c the causes of dreams d dreams

C. Translation (4 Marks)

4 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation: (2 marks)

1 The Egyptian woman has got over the traditional restrictions of society and has become man's partner in all fields.

- a لقد تغلبت المرأة المصرية على القيود التقليدية للمجتمع، وأصبحت شريكة للرجل في بعض المجالات.
b لقد نجحت المرأة المصرية في التغلب على القيود التقليدية للمجتمع، وأصبحت شريكة للرجل في جميع المجالات.
c لقد فازت المرأة المصرية بالقيود التقليدية، وأصبحت شريكة للرجل في جميع المجالات.
d لقد أصبحت المرأة المصرية شريكة للرجل في الدولة، وتغلبت جزئياً على قيود المجتمع.

B) Choose the correct English translation: (2 marks)

1 التعليم أساسي للطلاب في كل مكان من الأعمار، فهو عملية اكتساب المعرفة والقيم والمهارات والهوايات الإيجابية.

- a Teaching is essential for students of different years all over the world. It is the operation of acquiring knowledge, values, skills and positive hobbies.
b Learning is essential for students of different ages all over the world. It is the process of acquiring information, values, skills and negative habits.
c Education is essential for students of different ages all over the world. It is the process of acquiring knowledge, values, skills and positive habits.
d Education is not essential for students of similar ages all over the world. It is the operation of acquiring knowledge, values, skills and positive hobbies.



D. Novel (1 mark)

5 Answer the following questions:

1 How does the wind-sledge symbolize Phileas Fogg's character?

2 Why is missing the China described as the worst disaster yet?

E. Writing

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets to give the same meaning: (1 mark)

1 As a student, I always got up early. (used to)

2 Every night during our childhood, our mother read us a bedtime story. (would)

7 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following topic : (3 marks)

"How to Reach Your Goals"

Da7ee-7Englizzy

في
اللة الانجليزية

Unit 12 Time Habits & Punctuality



Mrs.

Shaimaa Farghally

انجليزي بقعد في الة ماغ



Part One: Lessons 1 & 2

KEY VOCABULARY

punctuality (n)	الانضباط	delayed (n-v)	تأخير / يؤخر
productivity (n)	إنتاجية	consistent (adj)	منتظم / منسق / مترابط
promptly (adv)	على الفور	optimistic (adj)	متفائل
attendance (n)	حضور	suspension (n)	إيقاف / تعليق
spontaneously (adj)	عفوي / تلقائي	consistently (adv)	بشكل منتظم / بانسجام
punctual (adj)	منضبط في الموعد		

DEFINITIONS

spontaneous (adj)	عفوي	done suddenly and without a lot of thought or planning
attendance (n)	حضور	act of being present at a place or event
punctual (adj)	منضبط في المواعيد	arriving or happening exactly at the arranged or expected time
optimistic (adj)	متفائل	hopeful and confident about the future
delay (v)	يتأخر / يؤخر	to be late or cause lateness
productivity (n)	إنتاجية	getting more tasks done in a given amount of time
promptly (adv)	على الفور	done quickly or immediately; without waiting
suspension (n)	إيقاف / تعليق	not allowing someone to take part in something for some time
consistent (adj)	ثابت / منتظم	always happening in the same way

IMPORTANT VOCABULARY

perception (n)	إدراك	adulthood (n)	سن الرشد	rude (adj)	وقح
action (n)	إجراء	lack (n)	نقص	flexible (adj)	مرن
blame(d) (v)	يلوم	random (adj)	عشوائي	concern (n)	قلق / هم
board (n)	مجلس إدارة	serious (adj)	خطير / جاد	racing (n)	سباق
excuse (n)	عذر	pattern (n)	نمط	strictly (adv)	بصرامة



current (adj)	حالي / جاري	reflect(ed) (v)	يعكس	valuable (adj)	ذو قيمة
follow(ed) (v)	يتبع	fallacy (n)	مغالطة	resource (n)	مورد
specific (adj)	محدد	manage(d) (v)	يدير / يتعامل مع	strict (adj)	صارم
tone (n)	نبرة	rude ness (n)	وقاحة / عدم تهذيب	trait (n)	سمة / خصلة
teammate (n)	زميل فريق	graduate(d) (v)	يتخرج	value(d) (v)	يقدر
incident (n)	حادثة	truly (adv)	حقًا	considered (v)	يعتبر
wonder(ed) (v)	يتساءل	pass(ed) (v)	يمر / ينجم	straight (adj)	مستقيم / مباشر

flexibly (adv) بمرونة

excuse (v) يعذر

promising (adj)	واعد	psychologist (n)	عالم نفس
relationship (n)	علاقة	ensured(d) (v)	يضمن
misunderstanding (n)	سوء فهم	intentionally (adv)	عن قصد
management (n)	إدارة	frequent ly (adv)	بشكل متكرر
apologetic (adj)	معتذر / تبريري	annoying (adj)	مزعج

EXPRESSIONS - IDIOMS - COLLOCATIONS & PREPOSITIONS

perception of time	الإحساس بقيمة الزمن	arrive promptly	يصل على الفور
lack of respect	عدم احترام	based on	بناءً على
run late	يتأخر	according to (prep)	وفقًا لـ

clock person

شخص منضبط

straight line	خط مستقيم	consistent attendance	حضور منتظم
time management	إدارة الوقت	by the time	بحلول الوقت
event person	شخص يربط الوقت بالأحداث	follow a schedule	يلتزم بجدول
planning fallacy	مغالطة التخطيط	reach adulthood	يبلغ سن الرشد
vital for	ضروري لـ	consistent teammate	زميل فريق منتظم
reflect on	يتأمل / يفكر في	decide on	يقرر

spontaneous personality

شخصية عفوية

get to	يصل إلى	promise to	يعد بـ
--------	---------	------------	--------



divide into	ينقسم إلى	sit down	يجلس
race the clock	يسابق الزمن	miss deadlines	يفوّت موعد التسليم
manage time	يدير الوقت	value punctuality	يقدر الانضباط في المواعيد
reflect personality	يعكس الشخصية	make a promise	يقطع وعدًا
ensure punctuality	يضمن الالتزام بالمواعيد	show a lack of respect	يُظهر نقص احترام
get the main idea	يفهم الفكرة الرئيسية	give an excuse	يقدم عذرًا
develop a perception of time	يطور الإحساس بقيمة الوقت		
face misunderstandings	يواجه سوء فهم		

SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS

Word

Synonyms

Antonyms

punctual (adj)

(منضبط)

on time (في الموعد),
prompt (سريع/فوري)

late, tardy

(بطيء/متأخر), (متأخر)

suspension (n)

(إيقاف/تعليق)

stoppage (توقف),
break (انقطاع)continuation, resumption
(استئناف), (استمرار)**optimistic (adj)**

(متفائل)

hopeful (مليء بالأمل),
positive (إيجابي)pessimistic, hopeless, desperate
(يائس), (عديم الأمل), (متشائم)**delay (n)**

(تأخير)

postponement (تأجيل), setback
(عرقلة), wait (انتظار)promptness, immediacy
(فورًا), (سرعة/فورية)**consistent (adj)**

(منتظم/ثابت)

steady (ثابت), reliable
(يمكن الاعتماد عليه)inconsistent, irregular
(غير ثابت), (غير منتظم)**attendance (n)**

(حضور)

presence (تواجد),
participation (مشاركة)absence, nonattendance
(غياب), (عدم الحضور)**spontaneous (adj)**

(عفوي)

natural (طبيعي), impulsive
(غير مخطط), unplanned (مندفع)planned, deliberate
(متعمد), (مخطط)**productivity (n)**

(إنتاجية)

efficiency (كفاءة), output
(ناتج)inefficiency, low output
(ضعف الإنتاج), (عدم كفاءة)**delay (v)**

(يؤخر)

postpone (يؤجل), put off (يؤجل),
hold up (يعطل), defer (يرجئ)hasten, speed up
(يسرع), (يسرع)**promptly (adv)**

(على الفور)

quickly (بسرعة), immediately
(في الحال), at once (فورًا)promptness, immediacy
(سرعة التنفيذ), (فورية)



LINGUISTIC NOTES

based in - based on**based in**

مقرّه / موجود في مكان : معناها (مكان +)

EX The school is **based in** Giza.**based on**

مبني على / معتمد على (فكرة / معلومات / دليل / قصة +)

EX The decision is **based on** facts.**on time - in time - at a time****on time**

في المعاد بالظبط

EX The exam started **on time**.**in time**

قبل فوات الأوان

EX I arrived **in time** to catch the bus.**at a time**

في كل مرة / في وقت واحد

EX Answer one question **at a time**.**productivity - production****productivity (n)**

الإنتاجية (قد إيه بتنجز)

EX Studying early increases your **productivity**.**production (n)**

الإنتاج نفسه (حاجات ملموسة)

EX Phone **production** increased this year.**optimistic - pessimistic****optimistic (adj)**

متفائل

EX I'm **optimistic** about the exam.**pessimistic (adj)**

متشائم

EX He is **pessimistic** about the results.



READING

Shaimaa Farghally

Do you ever **wonder** why some people always arrive **promptly** for everything, while others are always running late? **Psychologists** say that by the time we reach **adulthood**, we will have developed a **specific perception** of time.

Psychologists divide people into two groups based on how they see time. The first group includes people who are usually **punctual**; we can call them 'Clock People'. They see time as a **straight line**, like a road. It is a valuable **resource** that they must **manage** carefully, like money. By the end of a busy week, they will have followed their **schedule strictly** to avoid wasting a single moment. For these people, being late means they are losing time and showing a lack of respect.

The second group includes the people who are **frequently** late; we can call them 'Event People'. This group sees time more **flexibly**, not as a strict line. For them, finishing a **current** activity is more important than the clock. They are often **optimistic** and **truly** believe that by the time an hour passes, they will have completed many tasks.

This is often called the "planning **fallacy**".

While being late can be annoying, studies show it is not usually because the person is **intentionally rude**. Often, it **reflects** a **spontaneous** personality type that focuses more on what is happening now. By the time these two types work together, they will have faced many **misunderstandings**, but understanding these **traits** helps build better **relationships**.



LISTENING

- Mr Ahmed** : Salah, please sit down. We need to discuss your **attendance**. By the time this weekend, you will have arrived late four times.
- Salah** : I am very sorry, Mr Ahmed. I had some unexpected **delays** with the bus. I thought I would have reached the office by 8:00 a.m., but the traffic was terrible.
- Mr Ahmed** : I understand, but **punctuality** is vital for our **productivity**. If this **pattern** continues, by your next review, the **board** will have decided on your **suspension**.
- Salah** : I promise to change. By tomorrow morning, I will have arranged a different way to get to work.
- Mr Ahmed** : I hope so. We **value** your work, but we need a **consistent teammate**. If you improve, we will have forgotten this **incident** by next month.





KEY VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The school checks students' early every morning.
 (a) productivity (b) suspension (c) spontaneity (d) attendance
- 2 The player was given a/an after intentionally breaking the rules.
 (a) punctuality (b) suspension (c) productivity (d) attendance
- 3 Ahmed is famous for his ; he is never late.
 (a) attendance (b) suspension (c) punctuality (d) productivity
- 4 Youssef said that traffic was the reason for his
 (a) fallacy (b) resident (c) delay (d) lack
- 5 Hala is always ; she comes to class on time.
 (a) punctual (b) apologetic (c) spontaneous (d) optimistic
- 6 It is a good quality to remain during difficult times; hope is essential.
 (a) spontaneous (b) optimistic (c) punctual (d) apologetic
- 7 If you believe something is incorrect, you should inform the teacher.
 (a) promptly (b) annoyingly (c) slowly (d) currently
- 8 Nour gave a/an reply; it was not prepared beforehand.
 (a) apologetic (b) punctual (c) optimistic (d) spontaneous
- 9 I believe the director will the discussion instead of postponing it.
 (a) graduate (b) blame (c) manage (d) delay
- 10 Following a strict schedule helps increase
 (a) suspension (b) attendance (c) inactivity (d) productivity

DEFINITIONS

- 11 describes arriving exactly at the planned time.
 (a) Punctual (b) Optimistic (c) Consistent (d) Spontaneous
- 12 describes doing something without delay.
 (a) Spontaneously (b) Punctually (c) Promptly (d) Optimistically
- 13 refers to completing many tasks within a limited time.
 (a) Suspension (b) Productivity (c) Attendance (d) Delay
- 14 A/An refers to stopping someone from participating for a period of time.
 (a) delay (b) attendance (c) suspension (d) productivity



15. means being present in a place, such as school or work.
 a Attendance b Suspension c Productivity d Delay
16. To means to make something happen later than planned.
 a suspend b attend c prompt d delay
17. describes something that happens in the same manner every time.
 a Spontaneous b Consistent c Optimistic d Punctual

IMPORTANT VOCABULARY EXERCISES

18. You made that choice on purpose.
 a frequently b politely c intentionally d flexibly
19. Adel improved his time by following a schedule.
 a rudeness b teammate c management d relationship
20. She showed great about her father's condition.
 a misunderstanding b adulthood c perception d concern
21. He said sorry for his during the argument.
 a rudeness b relationship c teammate d management
22. He made a/an decision without thinking ahead.
 a consistent b random c promising d annoying
23. Khaled thanked his for helping him during the task.
 a relationships b management c teammates d rudeness
24. Honesty is an important to have in a close friend.
 a pattern b resource c tone d trait
25. You should sound after committing such a serious mistake.
 a apologetic b usual c optimistic d spontaneous
26. Hassan from medical school last year.
 a graduated b delayed c managed d blamed
27. She will every choice carefully before deciding.
 a skip b consider c reflect d ensure
28. Ali believed in superheroes until
 a concern b misperception c misunderstanding d adulthood
29. Maya didn't anyone else for the mistake.
 a blame b delay c graduate d manage
30. Nada prefers to on her mistakes to improve herself.
 a consider b value c ensure d reflect



31. Salma has a close with her grandma. She loves her much.
 (a) management (b) relationship (c) rudeness (d) teammate
32. Mona complained about the sound while the exam was going on.
 (a) valuable (b) annoying (c) promising (d) random
33. Climate have changed over the last few years.
 (a) trails (b) patterns (c) tones (d) resources
34. Huda works and adjusts her plans when necessary.
 (a) flexibly (b) intentionally (c) consistently (d) frequently
35. I truly the help I receive from my family.
 (a) ensure (b) value (c) reflect (d) leak
36. Dina made a/an beginning in the new subject.
 (a) promising (b) inconsistent (c) random (d) annoying
37. Sara showed of concentration after sleeping very late.
 (a) delay (b) lack (c) fallacy (d) incident
38. Omar follows a/an study plan and keeps improving.
 (a) random (b) negative (c) annoying (d) consistent

EXPRESSIONS -IDOMS -COLLOCATIONS & PREPOSITIONS

39. Without proper planning, you might your deadline.
 (a) give (b) miss (c) develop (d) get
40. At our school, we being on time.
 (a) race (b) face (c) give (d) value
41. Stop excuses and tell the truth.
 (a) racing (b) valuing (c) giving (d) developing
42. Timetables help punctuality at school.
 (a) give (b) ensure (c) reflect (d) race
43. Your speaking style can who you really are.
 (a) arrive (b) manage (c) miss (d) reflect
44. After thinking carefully, Ali decided the red coat.
 (a) to (b) up (c) into (d) on
45. He is always on time. He is a clock person. "Clock person" describes a person.
 (a) punctual (b) careless (c) forgetful (d) mad
45. After class, I reflected my mistakes to improve.
 (a) to (b) on (c) into (d) up



46. During long tests, students often the clock.
 a show b make c produce d race
47. Speaking loudly during others' talk disrespect.
 a ensures b shows c takes d envelops
48. When I borrow items, I always a promise to give them back.
 a make b miss c face d show
49. The teacher divided the class three groups.
 a into b on c onto d to
50. We must get class early today.
 a into b on c to d for

SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS

51. Due to his irregular attendance, Hella missed several classes.
 "Attendance" here means the opposite of
 a participation b presence c absence d registration e nonattendance
52. Fady is consistent in carrying out his tasks.
 "Consistent" here is a synonym of
 a measurable b steady c spontaneous d optimistic e reliable
53. His study plan was consistent, which made him study every day.
 "Consistent" here is the opposite of
 a regular b irregular c uncertain d inconsistent e random
54. Seham was optimistic about the results of her tests.
 "Optimistic" here means
 a punctual b positive c available d hopeful e consistent
55. The airport announced a suspension of trips due to safety issues.
 "Suspension" here can be replaced by
 a attendance b pause c resumption d stoppage e productivity
56. After hearing the good news, Adel felt optimistic.
 "Optimistic" here is the opposite of
 a positive b pessimistic c cheerful d desperate e doubtful
57. The coach asked the players to delay the warm-up.
 "Delay" here is the opposite of
 a rest b speed up c pause d hasten e stop



58

The teacher records students' attendance every morning.

"Attendance" here means

- a participation b presence c concern d direction e misunderstanding

59

The match was delayed due to bad weather conditions.

"Delay" here means

- a ensure b postpone c value d put off e reflect

60

Modern technology helps increase productivity.

"Productivity" here means

- a impact b output c delay d efficiency e suspension

Shaimaa Farghally

Shaimaa Farghally



GRAMMAR

Future Perfect

زمن المستقبل التام

Active إثبات

المعلوم

فاعل + will have + p.p

EX

She will have finished her homework by 9 p.m.

هيكون الفعل خلص قبل وقت معيّن في المستقبل .

Passive إثبات

المجهول

مفعول + will have been + p.p

EX

The report will have been prepared by Monday.

Active نفي

المعلوم

فاعل + won't have + p.p

EX

They won't have arrived by noon.

لسه الحاجة ما حصلتش قبل الوقت ده .

Passive نفي

المجهول

مفعول + won't have been + p.p

EX

The room won't have been cleaned by tonight.

التركيز على الحاجة اللي ما اتعملتش .

Yes / No Active سؤال

المعلوم

Will + فاعل + have + p.p ?

EX

Will you have completed the course by July?

بنسأل هل الحاجة هتكون خلصت ولا لا .

Yes / No Passive سؤال

المجهول

Will + مفعول + have been + p.p ?

EX

Will the bridge have been repaired by next year?

Wh – Active سؤال

المعلوم

Wh-word + will + فاعل + have + p.p ?

EX

When will he have saved enough money?

Wh – Passive سؤال

المجهول

Wh-word + will + مفعول + have been + p.p ?

EX

When will the tickets have been sold?



استخدامات Future Perfect

1 حدث سيكون خالص قبل وقت معيّن في المستقبل

غالبًا مع **by – before – this time – by the time**

- I will have finished the exam by 3 p.m. الامتحان سيكون خالص قبل الساعة 3
- Before Friday, she will have booked the tickets. قبل الجمعة التذاكر ستكون اتحتجزت
- This time next month, we will have moved to a new house. الوقت ده الشهر الجاي هنكون نقلنا

2 for + مدة زمنية مع وقت مستقبلي

- In 2030, he will have worked here for 15 years.
- Next week, I will have stayed in Cairo for ten days.

3 لاحظ استخدامه مع هذه الروابط

When-After – When – Once – As soon as – The moment

Before / By the time

- When you finish (مضارع بسيط - تام) the work, I will have left. (مستقبل تام)

4 لاحظ ما يلي:

مدة مستقبلية + **this time / in**

- This time next year, I will have learned Spanish. السنة الجاية الوقت ده هكون اتعلمت إسباني
- In five months' time, they will have built the bridge. بعد 5 شهور الكوبري هيكون اتبنى

5 مع التوقع نستخدم: **expect to have / be expected to have**

expect to have + p.p

- We expect to have finished the project by June.
- = We will have finished the project by June.

am / is / are expected to have + been + p.p

- The road is expected to have been repaired by winter
- = The road will have been repaired by winter.

لاحظ الفرق في المعني بين الجمل الآتية

EX 9 When you come tonight, I will cook the dinner . عملية الطبخ ستبدأ بعد الوصول

EX 10 When you come tonight, I will be cooking the dinner . الوصول سيقطع عملية الطبخ

EX 11 When you come tonight, I will have cooked the dinner. عملية الطبخ ستنتهي قبل الوصول

يمكن استخدام التركيبة: **Be going to have + p.p** للتعبير عن المستقبل التام



Will/shall + inf

Usage الاستخدام

I predict it will rain tomorrow.

1 تنبؤات بدون دليل :

Next year , I will be 20 years old .

2 حقائق مستقبلية (العمر) :

I will open the door .

3 القرارات السريعة :

that bag looks heavy. I'll help you with it .

4 العرض :

I 'll buy a mobile phone if you succeed .

5 الوعد :

will you shut the window ?

6 الطلب :

I 'll resign if I don't get a pay rise .

7 للتهديد :

Be quiet or I will punish you .

8 للتحذير :

9 مع بعض الكلمات مثل : think , believe , expect , predict , hope , promise , sure , certainly, probably

I hope I will see him tomorrow .

I expect he will win the race .

I promise I will visit you tomorrow .

I promise I will visit you tomorrow .

As soon as she arrives in London , she will call .

10 الروابط الزمنية مع المستقبل :

After I do my homework , I'll go to bed .

After

Before

As soon As

Once

The moment

مضارع بسيط

inf. / inf.+s

مضارع تام

have / has + p.p

مستقبل بسيط

will + inf

مضارع بسيط

inf. / inf.+s

مضارع تام

have / has + p.p

مستقبل بسيط غالبا منفى

will + inf او ممكن

till

Until



(am - is - are) + going to + inf.

Usage الاستخدام

It is cloudy . it is going to rain .

1 تنبؤات مع وجود دليل :

He can't swim . He is going to drown

2 الخطط المستقبلية : (plan - made a plan)

I have a plan . I am going to start my project .

3 النوايا : (Intend - intention)

We are going to visit Cairo. We have an intention .

4 القرارات المسبقة : (decide - make a decision - made up mind)

They have decided they are going to study .

She has made up her mind . she is going to leave.

Watch out ! You're going to fall .

5 اشيء علي وشك الحدوث :

present Continuous
(am - is - are) + v + ing

Usage الاستخدام

1 للأحداث المرتب لها مع الكلمات : arranged , made arrangements, prepared , booked , bought , all is okay

He is visiting his uncle . He has arranged .

He has booked the tickets . He is traveling tomorrow.

2 المناسبات الاجتماعية والأنشطة الرسمية من حفلات واعياد ميلاد/سفر/زيارات/مواعيد شخصية/المسابقات :

He's getting married next Friday .

Our school is taking part in a competition next week .

3 عدم مقدرة فعل شيء في المستقبل نتيجة الترتيب لفعل شيء اخر :

I can't meet you tomorrow as I am doing the shopping.



present simple
(inf. or inf. + s)

Usage الاستخدام

1 حدث في المستقبل طبقا لجدول او تقويم (مواصلات / فتح وغلق / بداية ونهاية / دراسة / سينما / مسرح) :

The train leaves at 7:30 a.m.

The plane takes off at 9 a.m.

Future Continuous
will be + v + ing

Usage الاستخدام

1 يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون مستمرا في نقطة معينة في المستقبل :

At 10 tomorrow , he will be in his office , he will be working .

This time tomorrow , I will be traveling to Luxor.

2 للحديث عن ما تم ترتيبه وتخطيطه في المستقبل :

Don't phone between 7 and 8 . We'll be having dinner .

I can't meet you tomorrow as I will be visiting my relatives.

= I can't meet you tomorrow as I'm visiting my relatives.

EXERCISE ON GRAMMAR



1 By this time next month, I finished all my exams.

- a had b will have c have d will be

2 They in this house for a year next July.

- a will have been b will be c have been d are

3 ten o'clock tomorrow, I will have finished all my homework.

- a At b By c In d On

4 My brother from the university by the end of next July.

- a is going to graduate b will be graduating
c has graduated d will have graduated



- 5 The government out a lot of projects by the end of 2030.
 a had carried b carrying c carry d will have carried
- 6 Amr will his tasks by next month.
 a be finished b has finished c have finished d finish
- 7 In a year time, they this massive building.
 a will have finished b will finishing c will be finished d are finishing
- 8 We the project in three days' time.
 a have finished b will finish c will be finishing d will have finished
- 9 In three weeks' time, the new dam will have
 a build b built c been building d been built
- 10 By the time my holiday is over, I lots of interesting places.
 a have visited b will be visiting c visit d will have visited
- 11 I have already confirmed the reservation; I to London tomorrow .
 a will fly b fly c am flying d am going to flying
- 12 Ali sixteen next week.
 a is b is going to be c will be d will have been
- 13 Don't phone me after 1.00 a.m. because I then .
 a sleep b will have been slept c will be sleeping d have slept
- 14 I you if you insult your friend again.
 a punish b will be punishing c will have punished d will punish
- 15 He'll take a shower after he lunch.
 a has had b had c had had d have
- 16 We to London tomorrow, we've got our visa and booked tickets .
 a travel b are traveling c will travel d is going to travel
- 17 By next October, the new factory
 a will be building b is going to be built c will have been built d will have built
- 18 By the time I get home, my wife lunch .
 a prepared b is preparing c will be prepared d will have prepared
- 19 A technician the air conditioner before we move into the new house.
 a has checked b will have checked c had checked d was checking



- 20 By this time next month, the prisoner set free.
 a had b had been c will have d will have been
- 21 By 2050, scientists believe that a cure for cancer will found.
 a have b be c have been d being
- 22 By the time the school year is over, we most of the grammar tenses.
 a will study b will have studied c had studied d will be studying
- 23 All our financial problems are expected to by next year .
 a solve b have solved
 c have been solved d have been solving
- 24 The 6th October City Monorail line by 2025 .
 a will complete b completed
 c will have been completed d complete
- 25 What before next summer?
 a will have you done b have you will done
 c you will have done d will you have done
- 26 Take your time and I for you by the gate .
 a will be waited b will have waited c will wait d going to wait
- 27 How much out of your new project in six months' time?
 a did you earn b will you have earned
 c you will have earned d had you earned
- 28 the final report before the manager arrives?
 a Did you prepare b Will you have prepared
 c had you prepared d were you preparing
- 29 This time next week, we to Saudi Arabia .
 a will be flying b will fly
 c are going to flying d fly
- 30 By 2030, they expect three more lines of the Cairo Metro .
 a to build b will have built
 c to have built d will have been built
- 31 I can't meet you tonight because I for my sister's wedding party.
 a was preparing b will be preparing
 c will have prepared d have prepared
- 32 I my uncle next week. I've arranged it.
 a visiting b would visit c am visiting d was visiting



- 33 I'll wait at the station until the train
 a will come b comes c is coming d came
- 34 Once he the task, the teacher will mark it.
 a has completed b completed c had completed d was completing
- 35 I have already confirmed the reservation; I to Rome tomorrow.
 a am flying b had flown c was flying d will fly
- 36 I think we this big task before the end of next week; we will take longer.
 a will have finished b won't have finished
 c haven't finished d are finishing
- 37 By the end of next year, Samir bigger house; I'm uncertain.
 a has bought b will have been bought
 c will buy d might have bought
- 38 The problem of food shortages solved by the end of the next decade. Who knows?
 a will have b will have been c might have been d might have
- 39 When you visit me at 8 tonight, I my homework and we can go out together.
 a will answer b will be answering
 c will be answered d will have answered
- 40 I'm sure more trees along the way to our town by the end of next year.
 a will have been planted b will be planting
 c will have planted d were planted
- 41 I can't visit you tonight because I for the final exam .
 a will have studied b will be studying c will study d will be studied
- 42 By the time we the English lesson will have started.
 a had arrived b will arrive c arrive d will have arrived
- 43 He tomorrow. He arranged everything.
 a will travel b is traveling c travel d has traveled
- 44 I like this digital camera; I it.
 a will be buying b will buy c won't buy d will have bought
- 45 We the summer holidays in Hurghada as planned; it's our favourite destination.
 a won't spend b are going to spend
 c aren't going to spend d will have been spent
- 46 Tarek has decided to buy a new car, so he the old one.
 a will be selling b would be sold c is going to sell d will have sold



- 47 I am going to book a flight to London when I the visa.
 a will get b had got c get d will be getting
- 48 I to the club with you this evening unless I have extra work to do; I haven't decided yet.
 a will be going b will have gone c may go d had to go
- 49 Which of the following is grammatically correct:
 a How many people will have been died before a cure for Covid19- is found?
 b How many people will be dying before a cure for Covid19- is found?
 c How many people will have been dead before a cure for Covid19- is found?
 d How many people had died before a cure for Covid19- is found?
- 50 One of the following sentences is incorrectly structured:
 a The box is heavy. Shall I carry it for you?
 b I think it will be cold tomorrow.
 c I going to buy a new car next month as intended.
 d I hope this problem will be solved tomorrow.
- 51 Which sentence means "Before next week, I will no longer be here".
 a Before next week, I will have left. b Before next week, I will leave.
 c Before next week, I will be leaving. d Before next week, I have left.
- 52 Which of the following is structurally correct?
 a Perhaps Ahmad may visit us tomorrow.
 b A new secondary school for girls will be building in our village.
 c I will have bought a bigger flat by the end of next year.
 d What will you be done all next evening?
- 53 Which of the following isn't structurally correct?
 a When guests arrive home, mother will have prepared lunch.
 b My uncle will have returned from abroad by the end of last month.
 c It's probable that Hatim will travel abroad on business next Monday.
 d I will be watching the new programme all next evening.
- 54 Which of the following is grammatically correct?
 a Will you have repaired the car before I returned from Alexandria?
 b Wael will visit us tomorrow. I'm not sure.
 c I won't have been carried out this difficult task before the end of next week.
 d By the end of August, we will have spent the summer holidays in Alexandria.



OPERATE YOUR MIND

تفكير منطقي



55 Don't panic, sir. The doctor due to arrive any minute.

- a is b will be c has been d had been

56 She the phone no matter who calls her.

- a hasn't answered b won't have answered
c wouldn't answer d won't answer

57 You able to see much better with these new glasses .

- a will be b have been c will have been d will be being

58 By 2050, English language will by millions of people.

- a have been speaking b have spoken c be spoken d speak

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets to give the same meaning:

- 1 The workers are scheduled to finish the hospital before 2027. (built)
- 2 The film ends at 9 PM, but we won't reach the cinema until 9:15 PM. (missed)
- 3 Someone will surely have delivered the package before Friday. (been)
- 4 Next week is their 25th wedding anniversary. (married)
- 5 Someone will have used this unused room for a party before we return. (been)
- 6 We expect the committee to reach a decision by noon. (been)
- 7 The workers are scheduled to finish the bridge by the end of 2026. (built)
- 8 They will have completed the renovation by October. (been)
- 9 The government will have vaccinated everyone by the end of the month. (expect to)
- 10 They will fly to Paris on Tuesday and return on Thursday. Friday is the deadline. (flown)
- 11 We will be married for ten years this December. (will)
- 12 Asmaa is supposed to tidy her room at 9 a.m. (by 9 a.m)
- 13 What will you have done before your exams? (been)
- 14 The laptop will have been charged before I leave for my office desk. (I ...)
- 15 Will the bushes have been watered by morning? (you have)



Part Two : Lessons 3 & 4

KEY VOCABULARY

resource (n)	مورد	commitment (n)	التزام
sharp (adj)	حاد	disappointment (n)	خيبة أمل
invest(ed) (v)	يستثمر	organized (adj)	منظم
scheduling (n)	جدولة	investment (n)	استثمار
master(ed) (v)	يتقن		

DEFINITIONS

organized (adj)	منظم	well planned and neatly arranged
commitment (n)	التزام	a strong promise or responsibility to do something
sharp (adj)	حاد	quick to understand and able to focus well
disappointment (n)	خيبة أمل	a feeling of unhappiness when hopes are not met
efficient (adj)	فعال	working in a way that wastes as little time as possible
resource (n)	مورد	something helpful that can be used to achieve an aim
scheduling (n)	جدولة	planning tasks or events at fixed times
master (v)	يتقن	to become very skilled or knowledgeable in something

IMPORTANT VOCABULARY

patience (n)	صبر	principal (n)	مدير / ناظر	deadline (n)	موعد نهائي
sincere (adj)	صادق	aid (n)	مساعدة	efficiency (n)	كفاءة
reliable (n)	موثوقة	central (adj)	أساسي	firm (adj)	صارم / ثابت
submit(ed) (v)	يقدم / يسلم	department (n)	قسم	dull (adj)	غير حاد
apologize (n)	اعتذار	disruption (n)	تعطيل	ensure(d) (v)	يضمن
closing (n)	ختام	visual (adj)	بصري	distraction (n)	تشيت
major (adj)	رئيسي	sincerity (adv)	بإخلاص	lateness (n)	تأخير
explorer (n)	مستكشف	quarterly (adj)	ربع سنوي	struggle(d) (v)	يعاني / يكافح



wealth (n)	ثروة	cure (n)	علاج	forever (adv)	إلى الأبد
efficient (adj)	كفاء / فعال	disrespect (n)	قلة احترام	greeting (n)	تحية
due (adj)	مستحق / مقرر	install(ed) (v)	يثبت	unlike (prep)	بخلاف
slide (n)	شريحة	account (n)	حساب	profound (adj)	عميق
compare(d) (v)	يقارن	prove (v)	يثبت		
acceptable (adj)	مقبول	apologize(d) (v)	يعتذر		
concentration (n)	تركيز	professional (adj)	مهني		
confidence (adj)	واثق	recognize(d) (v)	يدرك / يعترف		
establish(ed) (v)	يؤسس	goal-setting (n)	تحديد الأهداف		

EXPRESSIONS - IDIOMS - COLLOCATIONS & PREPOSITIONS

waste time	يضيع الوقت	arrive at desk	يصل إلى مكتبه
master productivity	يتقن الإنتاجية	set firm deadlines	يضع مواعيد نهائية صارمة
earn time	يكسب وقتًا	accept an apology	يقبل اعتذارًا
keep focus sharp	يركز جيدًا	submit project	يسلم المشروع
promise action	يعد بإجراء	take breaks	يأخذ استراحات
reach goals	يصل إلى أهداف	create a plan	يضع خطة
earn a rest	يستحق راحة	acknowledge impact	يقر بالتأثير
manage your time	ينظم وقتك	art of productivity	فن الإنتاجية
lack of punctuality	عدم الالتزام بالمواعيد	be gone forever	يزول إلى الأبد
be due in / on / at	يحلّ موعده في	by then	بحلول ذلك الوقت
invest in	يستثمر في	struggle with	يعاني من
compare ... to	يقارن بـ	submit ... to	يقدم إلى
earn back	يكسب مجددًا	treat ... like	يعامل مثل

lead to

يؤدي إلى



keep your focus sharp

يحافظ على تركيزه

ensure a happier lifespan

يضمن عمراً أسعد

SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS

Word

Synonyms

Antonyms

organized (adj)

(منظم)

structured (مهيكّل),
well-arranged (مرتّب جيّداً)disorganized, chaotic
(فوضوي), (غير منظم)**disappointment (n)**

(خيبة أمل)

dissatisfaction (عدم
رضا), frustration (إحباط),
discouragement (تشبيط)satisfaction, delight
(سعادة), (رضا)**sharp (adj)**

(حاد / ذكي)

acute (حاد), pointed
(قوي), intense (مدبّب)dull, foolish
(أحمق), (غبّي/باهت)**commitment (n)**

(التزام)

obligation (واجب), responsibility
(إخلاص), devotion (مسؤولية)neglect, indifference
(لا مبالاة), (إهمال)**resource (n)**

(مورد)

source (مصدر), asset (أصل/مورد)
(مادة), material (قيّم)scarcity, shortage
(عجز), (ندرة)**master (v)**

(يتقن)

control (يسيطر), dominate
(يهيمن)fail, neglect
(يفشل), (يهمل)**scheduling (n)**

(جدولة)

planning (تخطيط),
timetabling (وضع جدول)cancellation
(إلغاء)

LANGUAGE NOTES

resource & source

resource (n)

مورد / إمكانيات نستخدمها

EXThe teacher shared useful **resources** for studying.**source (n)**

مصدر الحاجة نفسها

a source of + noun**EX**Exercise is **a source of** energy.



like , unlike & as

like

زي / مثل

EX Like his brother, Ali loves football.

unlike

على عكس / مش زي

EX Unlike last year, this exam was easy.

as

ك / باعتباره / لأنه

EX

He works as a teacher.

as

ك (وظيفة / دور)

EX

She acted as a leader.

as

لأن

EX

Stay inside as it is raining.

READING

Time is Money

The famous **phrase** "Time is money," means that time is a valuable **resource** that, if managed well, can lead to success and **wealth**. **Unlike** money, which you can earn back, lost time is gone forever.

This idea is central to good time management. When you are organized, you reduce stress and increase your **productivity**. To value your time, you must treat it like money in your bank account. **Experts** suggest that if you start managing your time today, by this time next year, you will have achieved your most important goals. Wasting time often happens because we don't plan.

For example, spending hours checking social media or starting too many tasks at once is simply not

efficient. However, if you set **firm deadlines** now, by the end of the month, you will have finished all your difficult projects.

Finally, take short, planned breaks to keep your focus **sharp**. By valuing and managing your time, you **invest** in your future and **ensure** a longer, happier **lifespan**. If you follow these habits, by the time you **graduate**, you will have **mastered** the art of productivity, leading to more time for important things and fewer **disappointments**.



Shaimaa Farghally



Apology Letter

Dear Mr. Omar,
Please accept my **sincere apologies** for my recent **lateness**. I **recognize** that my lack of punctuality has affected the team's productivity. To ensure this does not happen again, I have created a new **time-management** plan.
By the end of this month, I will have **established** a consistent morning routine that allows for traffic delays. By next Monday, I will have **installed** a new **scheduling** app to help me stay efficient. I am **confident** that by the time our next **quarterly** review arrives, I will have proven my **reliability** to you and the entire **department**.
I will have completed all my current tasks by Friday to show my **commitment** to our valuable goals. Thank you for your **patience** as I work to improve my **professional** habits.
Sincerely,
Hamza Zaki



LISTENING

Mazen and Ziad are planning their final school project which is due in two weeks.

Mazen : We need to hurry, Ziad! By the time we meet our teacher on Thursday, we will have spent three weeks on this project, and we still haven't finished the conclusion.

Ziad : Don't worry. I have a plan. By tomorrow evening, I will have completed all the research for the final chapter.

Mazen : That's good, but what about the design? By the time you finish the research, will you have started the PowerPoint **slides**?

Ziad : Yes. **Actually**, by Friday morning, I will have designed all the **visual aids** too.

Mazen : I hope so. I'm worried about the printing. If we wait until Monday, the shop will have closed for the holiday.

Ziad : You're right. I will have printed everything by Sunday afternoon, then.

Mazen : Great! If we work hard this weekend, we will have **polished** the **entire** presentation before the **deadline**.

Ziad : Exactly. By the time the other students start their work on Monday morning, we will have submitted ours to the **principal**.

Mazen : Perfect. By then, we will have earned a long rest!





KEY VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Daily study is a/ an that helps you succeed later.
 a investment b disruption c disrespect d scheduling
- 2 Her notes are always tidy, so she is
 a sharp b organized c acceptable d efficient
- 3 Ali is very and picks up ideas quickly.
 a inefficient b unacceptable c disorganized d sharp
- 4 Proper helped me finish my tasks on time.
 a lifespan b disruption c disrespect d scheduling
- 5 Ahmed supports the charity as he promised, which shows
 a distraction b disappointment c commitment d concentration
- 6 The boy felt after his team was defeated.
 a concentration b attention c disappointment d commitment
- 7 Mona trained every day until she was able to the new playing skill.
 a prove b master c invest d install
- 8 I chose to my time to develop my English skills.
 a prove b install c invest d master

DEFINITIONS

- 9 A/An means being serious about a duty or promise.
 a investment b commitment c resource d disappointment
- 10 To means to learn something extremely well.
 a master b schedule c polish d invest
- 11 refers to arranging tasks or events to happen at specific times.
 a Investment b Resource c Scheduling d Disappointment
- 12 describes someone who understands things quickly and concentrates easily.
 a Valuable b Efficient c Organized d Sharp
- 13 describes something that is carefully planned and tidy.
 a Sharp b Valuable c Organized d Efficient
- 14 A/An is the feeling you get when things do not go as expected.
 a disappointment b investment c scheduling d commitment



IMPORTANT VOCABULARY

- 15 The film was extremely and boring.
 a confident b dull c due d profound
- 16 The director helped raise the company's
 a wealth b impatience c unreliability d department
- 17 The bill is tomorrow. You must pay today.
 a due b confident c profound d dull
- 18 The loud phone caused a/an during class.
 a investment b scheduling c disruption d respect
- 19 She welcomed her classmates with a warm
 a cure b greeting c maid d closing
- 20 He chose clothes for the interview.
 a quarterly b sincere c visual d professional
- 21 The teacher used materials to help students understand.
 a quarterly b visual c respectful d sincere
- 22 Silencing notifications increases study
 a lifespan b resource c efficiency d goal-setting
- 23 He logged into his bank to view his balance.
 a deadline b lateness c apology d account
- 24 His rude words were considered by everyone.
 a efficiency b scheduling c disrespect d investment
- 25 Mona wants to a routine to organize her time.
 a submit b establish c demolish d struggle
- 26 People believe you because of your
 a department b impatience c wealth d reliability
- 27 The story carried a very meaning.
 a dull b silly c due d profound
- 28 The teacher warned Ali that would not be tolerated.
 a deadline b lateness c reliability d account
- 29 I asked the IT worker to the software on my computer.
 a prove b invest c master d install
- 30 She thanked the doctor with a smile.
 a visual b sincere c quarterly d professional



- 31 He stood in the queue with a lot of
 (a) reliability (b) department (c) wealth (d) patience
- 32 Hella started to with grammar after missing classes.
 (a) submit (b) establish (c) struggle (d) polish
- 33 Good habits can help extend your
 (a) lifespan (b) inefficiency (c) resource (d) goal-setting
- 34 The noisy television is a big for me.
 (a) appointment (b) distraction (c) commitment (d) concentration
- 35 After his successful presentation, Ali felt very
 (a) dull (b) confident (c) due (d) profound
- 36 Mona used evidence to her point of view.
 (a) master (b) install (c) invest (d) prove
- 37 Because I was late, I sent a/an to my manager.
 (a) deadline (b) account (c) lateness (d) apology
- 38 Omar hurried because the task was approaching.
 (a) apology (b) deadline (c) account (d) lateness
- 39 He must his assignment to the headteacher before Thursday.
 (a) submit (b) struggle (c) demolish (d) establish
- 40 She switched off her mobile to improve her while studying.
 (a) distraction (b) commitment (c) concentration (d) disappointment
- 41 The business releases a report every three months.
 (a) visual (b) sincere (c) quarterly (d) wealthy
- 42 The medicine could be a for the illness.
 (a) closing (b) greeting (c) lifespan (d) cure

EXPRESSIONS - IDIOMS - COLLOCATIONS & PREPOSITIONS

- 43 During the discussion, I had to action to solve the issue.
 (a) promise (b) take (c) bake (d) reach
- 44 If you begin early, you can extra time to review your answers.
 (a) submit (b) waste (c) earn (d) accept
- 45 To prevent delay, Nour decided to clear deadlines for each task.
 (a) arrive (b) set (c) waste (d) earn
- 46 To succeed, you should your concentration strong during classes.
 (a) waste (b) keep (c) reach (d) submit



47. With regular training, Hassan can his goals more quickly.
 a reach b acknowledge c accept d set
48. After completing the big task, Khaled finally a break.
 a arrived b set c acknowledged d earned
49. After the discussion, Youssef chose to the apology from his colleague.
 a accept b submit c waste d reach
50. Before tests, Mona always a study plan for every subject.
 a focuses b submits c creates d teaches
51. By next morning, Adel will have the assignment to the teacher online.
 a submitted b accepted c set d taken

SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS

Choose the Two (2) correct answers out of the Five (5) options given:

52. Shaza studies in a very organized way.
 "Organized" here is close in meaning to
 a optimistic b sincere c orderly d quarterly e systematic
53. The office was very organized, which made finding things easy.
 "Organized" here is the opposite of
 a neat b clear c chaotic d simple e disorganized
54. Due to the storm, the scheduling was changed.
 "Scheduling" here is the opposite of
 a timetable b randomness c plan d prepare e cancellation
55. By the end of the course, Hani will master the new skills.
 "Master" here can be replaced by
 a improve b dominate c delay d schedule e control
56. After getting poor exam results, Hanaa experienced deep disappointment.
 "Disappointment" here means
 a dedication b frustration c responsibility d apology e letdown
57. After many weeks of effort, Ahmed felt satisfied with what he achieved.
 "Satisfaction" here is the opposite of
 a stress b worry c disappointment d surprise e discouragement



Formal Apology Letter

خطاب رسمي للاعتذار

WRITING SKILLS

Shaimaa Farghally

It is a formal letter written to apologize for a mistake in a polite and respectful manner.

هو خطاب رسمي يُكتب للاعتذار عن خطأ بطريقة مهذبة ومحترمة.

Notes on a Formal Apology Letter

ملاحظات على كتابة خطاب رسمي للاعتذار

Use Formal Greeting and Closing

تبدأ بتحيةة رسمية ، مثل:

Dear Ms. Sara,

وتنتهي بخاتمة رسمية، مثل:

Sincerely,

State the Reason Clearly

تذكر سبب الاعتذار بوضوح في الفقرة الأولى، مثل الاعتذار عن التأخير.

Apologize Directly

يكون الاعتذار مباشراً وصريحاً بدون غموض أو التفاف.

Acknowledge the Impact

توضح أن الخطأ كان تصرفاً غير صحيح لأنه سبب تعطيلاً أو أظهر عدم احترام للنظام .

Explain the Reason Without Excuses

تذكر السبب بهدوء وبأسلوب محترم دون اختلاق أعذار أو تبرير مبالغ فيه.

Promise Action

تتعهد بتغيير سلوكك واتخاذ خطوات واضحة لتحسين الالتزام بالمواعيد مستقبلاً.

Be Formal and Polite

تستخدم لغة رسمية ومحترمة طوال الخطاب دون أي تعبيرات عامية.

EXERCISES ON WRITING SKILLS

1 Which greeting is correct in a formal apology letter?

a Dear Ms. Sara,

b Hello my friend,

c Hi Sara,

d Hey Sara,

2 What should be mentioned in the first paragraph of a formal apology letter?

a Promising rewards

b Stating the reason for the apology

c Telling a story

d Giving advice

3 Which closing is appropriate for a formal apology letter?

a See you soon

b Yours truly,

c Best wishes,

d Sincerely,



- 4 A formal apology should be
- a funny and friendly b long and emotional
c polite and respectful d casual and simple
- 5 The writer should acknowledge the impact of the mistake to
- a make excuses b blame others
c show responsibility and awareness d shorten the letter
- 6 How should the reason for the mistake be explained?
- a With many excuses b By blaming others
c By ignoring it d Calmly and without excuses
- 7 What does "promise action" mean in an apology letter?
- a Promising to improve behavior b Explaining the mistake again
c Asking for forgiveness only d Ending the letter politely

TRANSLATION

Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- 1 Education is the most important factor that influences both an individuals and a country's development. It has now become an essential element in the success of any society's new generations.
- a التربية هي العامل الأكثر أهمية الذي يؤثر علي تنمية المجتمع و الدولة لقد أصبح الان عاملا أساسيا في نجاح الأجيال الجديدة في أي دولة.
b التعليم هو العامل الأكثر أهمية الذي يؤثر علي تنمية اقتصاد الدولة. لقد أصبح الان عنصرا أساسيا في نجاح الأجيال الجديدة في أي مجتمع.
c التعليم هو العامل الأكثر أهمية الذي يؤثر علي تنمية الفرد و الدولة. لقد أصبح الان عاملا أساسيا في نجاح الأجيال المعاصرة في أي دولة.
d التعليم هو العامل الأكثر أهمية الذي يؤثر علي تنمية الفرد و الدولة. لقد أصبح الان عاملا أساسيا في نجاح الأجيال الجديدة في أي مجتمع.
- 2 There is so much information available everywhere today. You can find thousands of articles and blog posts when you search online.
- a يوجد اليوم الكثير من المعلومات غير المتاحة في كل مكان . يُمكنك العثور على الآلاف من المقالات والمدونات عندما تبحث عبر الإنترنت.
b يوجد اليوم الكثير من المعلومات المتاحة في كل مكان . يُمكنك العثور على الآلاف من المقالات والمدونات عندما تبحث عبر الإنترنت.
c يوجد اليوم القليل جداً من المعلومات المتاحة في كل مكان . يُمكنك العثور على الآلاف من المقالات والمدونات عندما تبحث عبر الإنترنت.
d يوجد اليوم الكثير من المعلومات المتاحة في كل مكان . يُمكنك العثور على الآلاف من المقالات والمدونات عندما تبحث بعيداً عن الإنترنت.



Choose the correct English translation:

1 يعاني الكثير من الناس من غلاء المعيشة في العالم كله، فيجب على افراد المجتمع العمل علي زيادة الإنتاج وتغيير عاداتهم الاستهلاكية .

- a Many people suffer from the high cost of living all over the world, so society members must work to increase production and change their consuming habit.
- b Many people suffer from the high cost of living all over the world, so society organs must work to increase production and change their consuming customs.
- c Many people suffer from the high cost of living all over the world , so society members must work to increase crops and change their consuming habit.
- d Many people suffer from the high race of living all over the world , so society members must work to increase production and change their consuming habit.

2 لقد كان لدينا روبوتات لفترة طويلة ، ولكن اليوم يُمكن للروبوتات القيام بالكثير من الأشياء أكثر مما كانت تستطيع القيام به في الماضي .

- a We have robots for a long time, but that day robots can do a lot more things than robots couldn't do in the past.
- b We have had robots for a long time, but today robots can do a lot less things than robots could do in the past.
- c We have had robots for a long time, because today robots can't do a lot more things than robots could do in the past.
- d We have had robots for a long time, but today robots can do a lot more things than robots could do in the past.



TEST ON UNIT 12

A. Vocabulary and Structures (14 Marks)

1 Choose the Two (2) correct answers out of the Five (5) options given: (2 Marks)

- 1 Since Ra'fat arrived late again, the exam began without him.
"Late" here is the opposite of

a prepared b on time c ready d punctual e early

- 2 He showed strong commitment toward achieving the team's goals.
"Commitment" here means

a investment b direction c deadline d devotion e obligation

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (12 Marks)

- 1 It is necessary that we meet to talk about emerging problems.

a unintentionally b friendly c consistently d inflexibly

- 2 Lina noticed a/an in the argument; it did not make sense.

a delay b fallacy c incident d lack

- 3 describes someone who feels positive about what is coming.

a Punctual b Optimistic c Spontaneous d Consistent

- 4 As a teacher, Mr. Ali is very when it comes to deadlines.

a valuable b curved c strict d intended

- 5 Rana can her time effectively during tests.

a blame b delay c manage d graduate

- 6 We call him as "An event person". "An event person" here refers to a person who

a sleeps early b enjoys attending events
c avoids people d dislikes talking

- 7 In two hours' time, my cell phone

a is repairing b will repair
c will have repaired d will have been repaired

- 8 Said won't go out until he his tasks .

a has finished b will finish c had finished d finished

- 9 By 11 o'clock tomorrow, I the movie on TV.

a watch b going to watch
c will be watched d will have watched



- 10 I'll wait at the station until the monorail
 a came b will come c is coming d comes
- 11 The tone is a significant feature of a formal apology letter.
 a professional b rude c playful d careless
- 12 Which of the following should NOT be used in a formal apology letter?
 a Clear reason b Polite language
 c Direct apology d Informal expressions

B. Reading (7 Marks)

3 Read the following passage, then answer the question:

Once upon a time, in a small village surrounded by lush hills, there was a hidden garden filled with vibrant flowers and ancient trees. It was said that this garden was enchanted and could grant a single wish to anyone with a pure heart. Many villagers had heard stories about it, but none had ever found the way in. One sunny morning, a kind girl named Hana decided to search for the legendary garden. She followed a winding path through the forest, listening to the cheerful songs of birds and the rustling of leaves in the gentle breeze. After hours of walking, Hana stumbled upon a wooden gate covered in ivy. With a hopeful heart, she pushed it open and gasped at the beauty that lay before her. The garden was alive with colours: roses danced in the wind, and butterflies fluttered around. In the center stood a shimmering fountain that sparkled under the sunlight. Hana approached the fountain and closed her eyes, wishing for happiness and peace for her family and friends. As she spoke her wish, the water sparkled even brighter, and she felt a warm glow surrounding her. When Hana returned home, she noticed that kindness and joy filled the hearts of everyone in the village. The enchanted garden had indeed granted her wish, reminding all that true magic lies in love and togetherness.

- 1 The main idea of the text is about
 a A greedy girl b An evil girl
 c A girl with a cruel heart d A girl with a charming heart
- 2 There was a beautiful in the middle of the garden.
 a fortune b fountain c mountain d palace
- 3 What is the best summary for the LAST paragraph?
 a True love is useless. b True magic is found in true love.
 c Evil people can easily win. d Magic can give us happiness.
- 4 The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
 a the garden b the fountain c her wish d a wooden gate
- 5 As she spoke her wish, she felt a warm surrounding her.
 a glow b crew c blow d flow



- 6 Hana seems to be a/an girl.
 a) curious b) insane c) severe d) sensitive
- 7 The underlined word "wish" can be replaced by
 a) grieve b) career c) dream d) task

C. Translation (4 Marks)

4 A) Choose the correct Arabic translation: [2 marks]

- 1 **Bullying is a problem that can affect the ability of students to learn. We must ensure that all students learn in safe environment.**

- a) التمر مشكلة يمكن ان تؤثر علي قدرة الطلاب علي التعلم . يجب علينا التأكد من ان جميع الطلاب يتعلمون في بيئة آمنة.
 b) التوتر مشكلة يمكن ان تؤثر علي قدرة الطلاب علي التعلم . يجب علينا التأكد من ان جميع الطلاب يتعلمون في بيئة آمنة.
 c) التمر مشكلة يمكن ان تؤثر علي قدرة الطلاب علي التعلم . يجب علينا التأكد ان جميع الطلاب يتعلمون في بيئة نظيفة.
 d) التلوث مشكله يمكن ان تؤثر علي قدرة الطلاب علي التعلم . يجب علينا التأكد من ان جميع الطلاب يتعملون في بيئه آمنة.

4 B) Choose the correct English translation: [2 marks]

2 **مصر في حاجة الي جهود العلماء والمبدعين واهل الفكر لاتخاذ خطوات ايجابية لتحقيق التنمية.**

- a) Egypt is in need of trials of scientists ,creative and thinkers to take passive steps to do development.
 b) Egypt is in need to efforts of science , creative and thinkers to make positive steps to recognize development.
 c) Egypt is in need of efforts of scientists , creativity and thinkers to do positive steps to achieve development.
 d) Egypt is in need of the efforts of scientists ,creators and thinkers to take positive steps to achieve development.



D. Novel (1 marks)

5 Answer the following questions:

- 1 How does Passepartout's anger toward Fix highlight the importance of loyalty in the story?
- 2 What does Fix's mistake reveal about the reliability of human judgment?

E. Writing

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets to give the same meaning: (1 mark)

- 1 By Friday, I will have finished answering these drills. (been)
- 2 Next Ramadan, I will be in Makkah. (traveled)

7 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following topic : (3 marks)

Write a formal apology letter to your boss apologizing for not attending the company meeting . Your name is Ra'fat. Your boss's name is Hella.



Review 4

Based On Units 10, 11 & 12

A. Vocabulary and Structures

Choose the Two (2) correct answers out of the Five (5) options given:

1. "Finding your passion can increase your motivation."
The synonym of motivation is
a) encouragement b) drive c) boredom d) laziness e) weakness
2. "Eating healthy food helps maintain good nutrition."
The meaning of nutrition is
a) proper diet b) healthy eating c) illness d) starvation e) hunger
3. "Regular exercise helps people stay fit."
The opposite of fit is
a) healthy b) strong c) weak d) tired e) active
4. "Being punctual shows respect for others' time."
The antonym of punctual is
a) late b) on time c) tardy d) careful e) fast
5. "People must not ignore their mental health."
The meaning of ignore is
a) forget b) neglect c) care d) obey e) include

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

6. A person who knows what they enjoy doing has found their
a) routine b) passion c) schedule d) habit
7. Drinking enough water is part of a lifestyle.
a) careless b) healthy c) stressful d) lazy
8. Being late to school every day shows poor
a) nutrition b) punctuality c) fitness d) talent
9. Finding your passion helps you stay and focused on your goals.
a) motivated b) delayed c) confused d) careless
10. Getting enough sleep helps students feel more during the day.
a) energetic b) bored c) exhausted d) careless
11. Healthy habits can prevent many problems.
a) health b) timetable c) traffic d) social
12. Planning your tasks helps you use your time
a) effectively b) suddenly c) accidentally d) slowly



- 13 I decided to my time in improving my English.
 a invest b master c install d prove
- 14 Setting clear goals helps students achieve in life.
 a success b delay c failure d weakness

B. Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

- 15 She jogging every morning to stay healthy.
 a used to b uses to c is used d was used
- 16 I expect we all the work by five o'clock this evening.
 a will have been done b will have done
 c will be done d will be doing
- 17 By the time my father comes home, I my research for three hours.
 a will have done b will do c have done d had been done
- 18 When I was in primary school, I to school on foot.
 a used to going b would go c use to go d would be going
- 19 If you sleep early, you feel energetic in the morning.
 a would b will c had d were
- 20 Students follow healthy habits to stay active and focused.
 a are supposed to b used to c will have d are using
- 21 By the end of this month, she a whole daily study schedule.
 a completes b will complete
 c will have completed d has completed
- 22 You submit the project on time, or you may lose marks.
 a are able to b are supposed to c were used to d will have

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets to give the same meaning:

- 23 Will you finish the project before it is Friday? (by Friday)

- 24 I no longer wake up late on school days. (used to)

- 25 She didn't hurt you on purpose. (mean)

- 26 She used to hate spicy food, but now she eats it. (got)



C. Translation

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

27 Innovation drives progress in communities by solving problems creatively and efficiently together. It encourages young people to develop ideas that improve lives sustainably everywhere.

- a يدفع الابتكار التقدم في المجتمعات من خلال حل المشكلات بإبداع وكفاءة معًا، ويشجع الشباب على تطوير أفكار تحسن الحياة بشكل مستدام في كل مكان.
- b يعزز الابتكار التقدم في المجتمعات من خلال تجاهل المشكلات تمامًا، ويمنع الشباب من تطوير أفكار تفيد الحياة في أي مكان.
- c يغير الابتكار المجتمعات من خلال التركيز على المستفيدين فقط دون تعاون، ويمنع الشباب على تطوير أفكار تخدم الحياة مستقبلاً.
- d يؤثر الابتكار على المجتمعات من خلال التنمية فقط، ويجعل الشباب يعملون على تطوير أفكار مفيدة للحياة دائماً.

28 Healthy habits protect individuals by improving physical and mental well-being daily. They help societies reduce disease rates and increase productivity over time.

- a تؤثر العادات الصحية على الأفراد دون تحسين الصحة الجسدية أو النفسية، وتمنع المجتمعات من تقليل الأمراض أو زيادة الإنتاجية مستقبلاً.
- b تقتصر العادات الصحية على النشاط البدني فقط، ولا تساعد المجتمعات على تقليل الأمراض أو تحسين الإنتاجية بمرور الزمن.
- c تساعد العادات الصحية على راحة الأفراد، وتجعل المجتمعات أقل قدرة على العمل أو الإنتاج مع الوقت.
- d تحمي العادات الصحية الأفراد من خلال تحسين الصحة الجسدية والنفسية يوميًا، وتساعد المجتمعات على تقليل معدلات الأمراض وزيادة الإنتاجية مع مرور الوقت.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

29 يساعد العمل التطوعي على تقوية الروابط الاجتماعية بين أفراد المجتمع، كما يعلم الشباب تحمل المسؤولية وخدمة الآخرين بإيجابية.

- a Voluntary work weakens relationships in society and prevents young people from helping others.
- b Voluntary work focuses only on personal benefits and ignores social responsibility completely.
- c Voluntary work helps strengthen social bonds among community members. It also teaches young people to take responsibility and serve others positively.
- d Voluntary work limits cooperation between people and discourages positive behavior in communities.



يساعد احترام الوقت على تنظيم الحياة اليومية وتحقيق الأهداف بكفاءة كما يعكس الالتزام بالمواعيد احترام الآخرين وتقدير جهودهم.

30

- a) Respecting time wastes daily life and prevents people from achieving goals. It also affects valuing others and appreciating their efforts.
- b) Respecting time helps organize daily life and achieve goals efficiently. It also reflects valuing others and appreciating their efforts.
- c) Respecting time only affects personal schedules and has no social importance. It also affects valuing others and approaching their efforts.
- d) Respecting time causes stress and makes people ignore others' efforts. It also reflects valuing others and approaching their effects.

D. READING COMPREHENSION

Read the following passage, then answer the question:

Read the following passage, then answer the questions below.

Being a good citizen is an important responsibility for every individual in society. A good citizen respects laws, cares about others, and works to improve the community. Citizenship is not only about rights, but also about duties that help create a safe and organized society. One way to be a good citizen is by respecting rules and laws. Following traffic laws, protecting public property, and respecting school rules help maintain order and safety. In addition, good citizens show respect toward others, regardless of their background or opinions. This behavior promotes tolerance and peaceful coexistence. Another important aspect of good citizenship is participating positively in the community. Volunteering, helping neighbors, and taking part in community activities strengthen social bonds. Citizens should also care about the environment by keeping public places clean and saving natural resources. Moreover, a good citizen is honest and responsible. Being truthful, completing duties on time, and respecting others' rights build trust within society. Young people, in particular, play a key role in shaping the future by showing positive behavior and good values. In conclusion, good citizenship is essential for building strong and successful societies. When individuals act responsibly and care about others, they contribute to progress, stability, and a better quality of life for everyone.

- 31 The passage mainly discusses
 - a) school discipline
 - b) personal success
 - c) good citizenship
 - d) environmental problems
- 32 A good citizen should respect
 - a) only family members
 - b) rules and laws
 - c) personal opinions only
 - d) competition
- 33 Respecting others helps promote
 - a) conflict
 - b) tolerance
 - c) laziness
 - d) confusion
- 34 One example of positive community participation is
 - a) ignoring neighbors
 - b) breaking rules
 - c) volunteering
 - d) wasting resources



35. Caring about the environment includes
 a) polluting streets b) damaging public property
 c) keeping public places clean d) ignoring waste
36. Being honest and responsible helps build
 a) fear b) punishment c) trust d) delay
37. According to the passage, young people
 a) have no role in society b) shape the future with their behavior
 c) should avoid responsibility d) focus only on rights

E. WRITING

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

38. In a formal apology letter, the writer should begin with
 a) informal greetings b) a clear statement of apology
 c) personal stories d) jokes and humor
39. A formal apology letter should mainly use
 a) slang and contractions b) polite and respectful language
 c) emotional and exaggerated expressions d) short spoken phrases
40. One important element of a formal apology letter is
 a) blaming others for the mistake b) denying responsibility
 c) explaining the reason for the apology d) changing the topic
41. In a hobby review, the writer's main purpose is to
 a) apologize to the reader b) describe and evaluate the hobby
 c) give instructions only d) complain about free time
42. A good hobby review usually includes
 a) unrelated personal problems b) reasons why the hobby is enjoyable
 c) formal complaints d) excuses and apologies
43. The language used in a hobby review should be
 a) very formal and official b) clear and engaging
 c) impolite and direct d) unclear and repetitive



Write about (120-150) words on one of the following :

- 44 Write an essay about (180-150) words on "Planning your time".

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

F. THE NOVEL

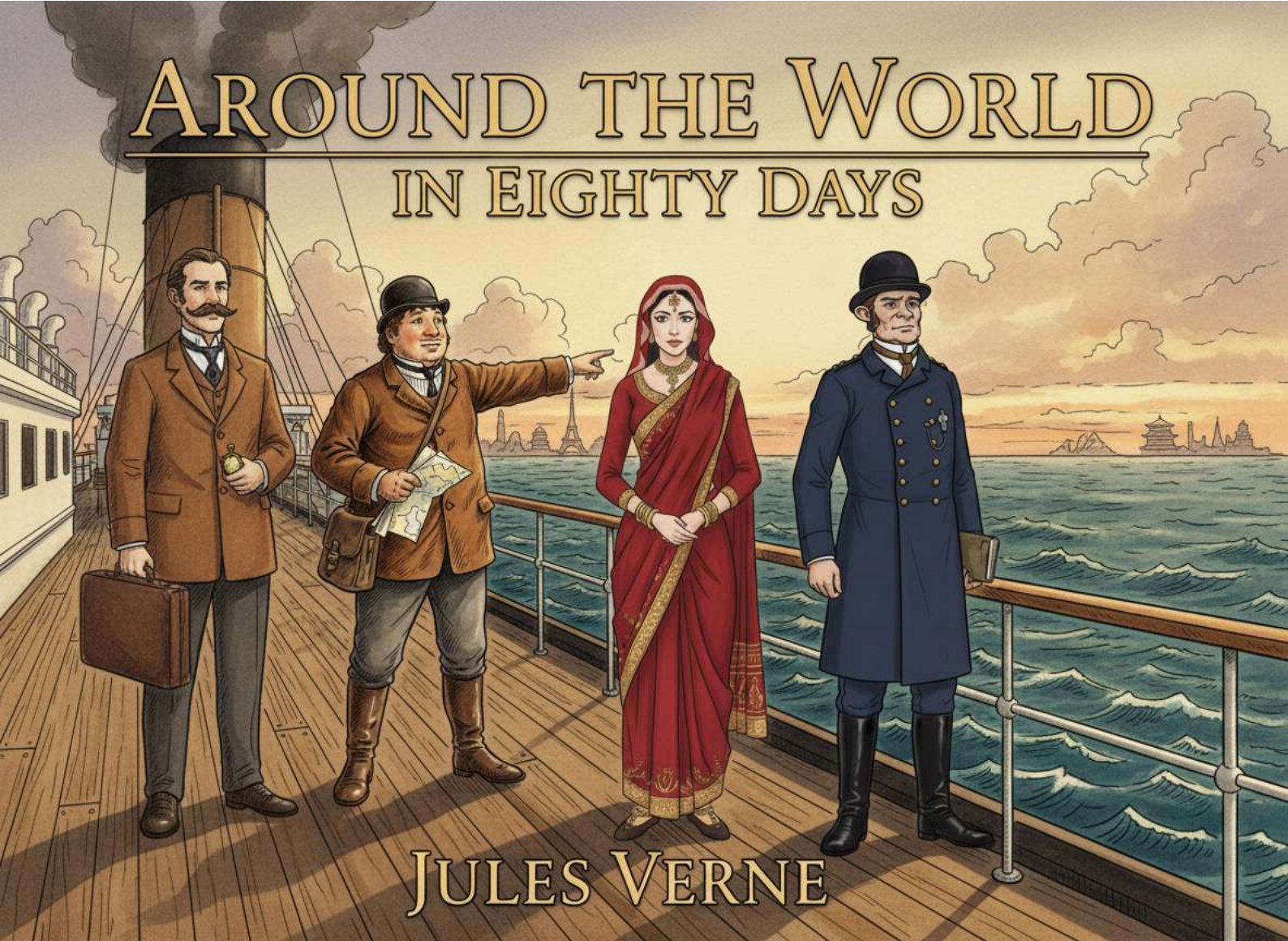
Answer the following questions :

- 45 What does the buffalo delay suggest about travel during that period?
-
- 46 Why is burning the ship an extreme but logical decision?
-
- 47 Why is Phileas Fogg's decision to rescue Passepartout important to the story?
-
- 48 Why is Passepartout's anger toward Fix significant to the theme of loyalty?
-

Da7ee-7Englizzy

في
اللة الانجليزية

AROUND THE WORLD IN EIGHTY DAYS



JULES VERNE

Mrs.

Shaimaa Farghally

انجليزي بقعد في الة ماغ



Chapter (7)

Arrest and Rescue: Calcutta to Hong Kong Arrival Calcutta

القبض والإنقاذ - من كالكوتا إلى هونغ كونج (الوصول إلى كالكوتا)

Vocabulary

bail (n)	كفالة	guarantee (v)	يضمن	log (n)	دفتر السجل
furious (adj)	غاضب	fault (n)	خطأ	blink (v)	يرمش
entire (adj)	كامل	carriage (n)	عربة	charge (n)	تهمة
fine (n)	غرامة	approach (v)	يقترب	trap (n)	فخ
straight (v)	يربت	sum (n)	مبلغ	gasp (v)	يلهث
pier (n)	رصيف بحري	guilty (adj)	مذنب	incident (n)	حادث
dock (n)	رصيف الميناء	wipe (v)	يمسح	case (n)	قضية
precious (adj)	ثمين	courtroom (n)	قاعة المحكمة	log (n)	دفتر السجل
smirk (v)	يبتسم ابتسامة ساخرة	courthouse (n)	المحكمة / دار القضاء		
sentence (v/n)	يحكم / حكم	distressed (adj)	مضطرب		
triumphant (adj)	منتصر / فخور بالانتصار	in despair	في حالة يأس / بائس		
		approach (v)	يقترب		

Idioms & Expressions التعبيرات والاصطلاحات

Imperturbable air	هدوء شديد في المواقف الصعبة
The law was sacrosanct	القانون مقدس ويجب احترامه
Sealed their own fate	تسببوا في مصيرهم بأنفسهم
A collective gasp	شهقة جماعية
Wealth trumping justice	المال يتغلب على العدالة



Chapter 7 in Points الفصل السابع في نقاط

- Mr. Fogg, Passepartout, and Aouda reached Calcutta after a tough journey.
وصل السيد فوج وباسبريتو وأودا إلى كالكوتا بعد رحلة شاقة.
- They arrived on the afternoon of October 25th.
وصلوا في مساء يوم ٢٥ أكتوبر.
- The next ship to Hong Kong, the Rangoon, was set to leave at five.
كانت السفينة التالية المتجهة إلى هونغ كونغ (رانغون) ستغادر في الساعة الخامسة.
- Fogg focused on making sure Aouda would be safe before leaving.
ركز فوج على التأكد من أن أودا ستكون بأمان قبل المغادرة.
- Detective Fix followed them closely after they left the station.
تبعهم المحقق فيكس عن قرب بعد خروجهم من المحطة.
- Two policemen ordered Mr. Fogg and Passepartout to come with them.
أمر شرطيان السيد فوج وباسبريتو بمرافقتهم.
- They were taken by carriage to a government building.
تم اقتيادهم بعربة إلى مبنى حكومي.
- They were locked in a small room to wait for Judge Obadiah.
تم احتجازهم في غرفة صغيرة بانتظار القاضي أوباديا.
- Aouda felt distressed and blamed herself for Fogg's trouble.
شعرت أودا بالحزن ولامت نفسها على مشاكل فوج.
- Passepartout was sentenced to 15 days; Fogg to eight days and a fine.
حكم على باسبريتو بالسجن ١٥ يوما، وعلى فوج بثمانية أيام وغرامة.
- Fogg offered bail, and the large sum was accepted.
عرض فوج دفع كفالة، وتم قبول المبلغ الكبير.
- They left the courthouse quickly and rushed to the dock.
غادروا المحكمة بسرعة وتوجهوا إلى الميناء.
- They boarded the Rangoon just in time with their precious tickets.
ركبوا السفينة رانغون في الوقت المناسب بتذاكرهم الثمينة.
- Fix stood on the pier in despair, watching them leave.
وقف فيكس على الرصيف في حالة يأس، يراقبهم وهم يغادرون.
- Fogg reminded Aouda that a human life is more precious than money.
أخبر فوج أودا أن حياة الإنسان أغلى من المال.
- Passepartout wiped his eyes as the journey continued.
مسح باسبريتو دموعه بينما استمرت الرحلة.

القيم في هذا الفصل Values in This Chapter

Respect for the law

احترام القانون

Fogg follows the officers without resistance.

يطيع فوج الضباط دون مقاومة.

Using wealth responsibly

استخدام المال بحكمة

Fogg pays an enormous bail to save time and protect his companions.

يدفع فوج كفالة كبيرة لحماية رفاقه وتوفير الوقت.

Moral courage

الشجاعة الأخلاقية

Fogg values saving a life more than winning a wager.

يفضل فوج إنقاذ حياة إنسان على الفوز بالرهان.

Honesty and responsibility

الصدق وتحمل المسؤولية

Passepartout admits his mistake without excuses.

يعترف باسباريتو بخطئه دون تقديم أعذار.



ترجمة الفصل Chapter Translation

After a long and difficult journey across the jungle, Mr. Fogg, Passepartout, and Aouda finally reached the great city of Calcutta on the afternoon of October 25th. The clock at the station showed exactly four o'clock. Their next ship, the Rangoon, was set to leave for Hong Kong at five. They had only one short hour to spare.

Fogg, as usual, showed no sign of worry. His first thought was to make sure Aouda would be safe for the rest of the voyage. The dangers she had escaped in India still weighed heavily on his mind.



بعد رحلة طويلة وصعبة عبر الغابة، وصل السيد فوج وباسبارتو وأودا أخيرًا إلى مدينة كلكتا الكبرى بعد ظهر يوم ٢٥ أكتوبر. كانت الساعة في المحطة تشير إلى الرابعة تمامًا. وكانت سفينتهم التالية، رانجون، ستغادر إلى هونغ كونج في الساعة الخامسة. لم يكن أمامهم سوى ساعة واحدة فقط. كان فوج، كعادته، هادئًا ولم يظهر أي قلق. كان أول ما فكر فيه هو التأكد من أن أودا ستكون آمنة خلال بقية الرحلة. وكانت الأخطار التي نجت منها في الهند لا تزال تشغل تفكيره.

Just as the three travelers stepped outside the station—Detective Fix following closely behind—two policemen approached them.

"Mr. Phileas Fogg?" one of them asked.

"I am he," said Fogg calmly.

"And this man is your servant?"

"Yes," Fogg replied.

"Both of you will come with me."



وبمجرد أن خرج المسافرين الثلاثة من المحطة، وكان المفتش فيكس يتبعهم عن قرب، اقترب منهم شرطيان.

السيد فيليبس فوج؟» سأل أحدهما.

«نعم، أنا هو» قال فوج بهدوء.

«وهذا الرجل خادمك؟»

«نعم» أجاب فوج.

«كلاكما ستأتيان معي»

Passepartout opened his mouth to protest, but the officer raised his truncheon, and Fogg quietly motioned for him to stay calm. Fogg always respected the law, even when he did not understand the reason.

"May this lady come with us?" Fogg asked, referring to Aouda.

After a moment, the officer agreed, and the three were taken in a heavy carriage through the streets of Calcutta. Fix followed silently, pleased that events were going exactly as he had hoped.



حاول باسبارتو الاعتراض، لكن الضابط رفع عصاه، فأشار له فوج بهدوء أن يلتزم الهدوء. كان فوج يحترم القانون دائمًا، حتى عندما لا يفهم سببه.

قال فوج: «هل يمكن لهذه السيدة أن تأتي معنا؟» مشيرًا إلى أودا.

وبعد لحظة وافق الضابط، ونُقل الثلاثة في عربة ثقيلة عبر شوارع كلكتا. تبعهم فيكس في صمت، سعيدًا بأن الأمور تسير كما كان يتمنى.



A Sudden Arrest قبض مفاجئ

Shaimaa Farghally

The carriage stopped at a government building. The travelers were taken into a small room with barred windows.

"You will appear before Judge Obadiah at eight-thirty," the officer announced, and locked the door behind them.

Passepartout threw himself into a chair. "We are prisoners! But what have we done?"

Aouda, distressed, turned to Fogg. "This is my fault," she said. "It is for saving me that you have been arrested. Please leave me to my fate."



اتوقفت العرببة عند مبنى حكومي، وأدخل المسافرون إلى غرفة صغيرة ذات نوافذ حديدية. قال الضابط: «ستمثلون أمام القاضي أوبادايا في الساعة الثامنة والنصف»، ثم أغلق الباب خلفهم. جلس باسبارتو على الكرسي وقال: «نحن سجناء! لكن ماذا فعلنا؟» التفتت أودا إلى فوج وهي حزينة وقالت: «هذا خطئي، لقد قبض عليكم لأنكم أنقذتموني، أرجوك اتركني لمصيري.»

Fogg, as calm as ever, shook his head. "Madam, this arrest is not on your account. I will not leave you."

In the corner, Fix watched with satisfaction. He knew exactly why they had been arrested: the old incident in Bombay, when Passepartout had entered the Malabar Hill temple wearing shoes, breaking a sacred rule. Fix had informed the Calcutta police in the hope that Fogg would be delayed long enough for the warrant from London to arrive.



هز فوج رأسه بهدوء وقال: «سيدتي، هذا القبض ليس بسببك، لن أتركك.» في الزاوية، كان فيكس يراقب برضا. كان يعرف تمامًا سبب القبض عليهم: الحادث القديم في بومبي، عندما دخل باسبارتو معبد «مالابار هيل» مرتدياً الحذاء، مخالفاً قاعدة مقدسة. كان فيكس قد أبلغ شرطة كلكتا على أمل أن يتأخر فوج بما فيه الكفاية حتى يصل أمر القبض من لندن.

Before the Judge أمام القاضي

At half past eight, they were taken into a courtroom filled with people.

Judge Obadiah entered, followed by his clerk.

"Phileas Fogg?"

"Present," said Fogg.

"Passepartout?"

"Present," the valet replied.

في الثامنة والنصف، أدخلوا إلى قاعة محكمة مليئة بالناس. دخل القاضي أوبادايا يتبعه كاتبه.

«فيلياس فوج؟»

«حاضر»، قال فوج.

«باسبارتو؟»

«حاضر»، أجاب الخادم.



Shaimaa Farghally

Shaimaa Farghally



Three Indian priests were brought in. Passepartout recognized them immediately—they were the same men who had chased him from the temple in Bombay.

The clerk read the charge: «Sacrilege committed in a Brahmin temple at Malabar Hill.»

Passepartout jumped up. «But it was not in Bombay! The crime was at Pillaji — where they were going to burn a woman! These men—!»

«Pillaji?» the judge repeated. «No, sir. The crime is in Bombay. You entered a holy temple with shoes on.»

Passepartout froze. He suddenly understood. «My shoes...» he whispered.



تم إحضار ثلاثة كهنة هنود. وتعرف عليهم باسبارتو فوراً - كانوا نفس الرجال الذين طاردوه خارج المعبد في بومبي.

قرأ الكاتب التهمة: «تدنيس معبد براهمي في مالابار هيل.»

قفز باسبارتو من مقعده وقال: «لكنه لم يكن في بومبي! الجريمة كانت في بيلاجي - حيث كانوا سيحرقون امرأة! هؤلاء الرجال.»

«بيلاجي؟» كرر القاضي. «لا يا سيدي. الجريمة وقعت في بومبي. لقد دخلت معبداً مقدساً مرتدياً الحذاء

تجمد باسبارتو في مكانه. وفهم فجأة. همس: «حذائي...»

The clerk held up a pair of worn, dusty shoes—Passepartout's own. The room murmured.

Fix smirked in his corner.

Fogg remained calm. «I admit the facts,» he said, «but I wish the priests to admit what they were about to do at the pagoda of Pillaji.»

The judge looked confused. «That has nothing to do with this case.»

Passepartout sank lower in his seat. Fogg checked his watch.



رفع الكاتب زوجاً من الأحذية البالية المغبرة - كانت أحذية باسبارتو. وعلم الهمس في الغرفة.

ابتسم فيكس بخبث في زاويته.

ظل فوج هادئاً وقال: «أقر بالوقائع، ولكن أود أن يعترف الكهنة بما كانوا على وشك فعله في معبد بيلاجي.»

نظر القاضي في حيرة وقال: «هذا لا علاقة له بهذه القضية.»

انكمش باسبارتو في مقعده، بينما نظر فوج إلى ساعته.

The Sentence الحكم

Judge Obadiah straightened his papers.

«For violating the religious laws of India,» he said sternly, «Jean Passepartout is sentenced to fifteen days in prison and a fine of three hundred pounds.»

Passepartout gasped.

The judge continued.

«Phileas Fogg, as the master of the servant, is equally guilty of complicity.

You are sentenced to eight days in prison and a fine of one hundred and fifty pounds.»

The courtroom stirred with shock. Fix felt triumphant. Eight days in jail would destroy Fogg's entire journey.





عدل القاضي أوبادايا أوارقه.
وقال بصرامة: «لانتهاك القوانين الدينية في الهند، يُحكم على جان باسبارتو بالسجن خمسة عشر يومًا وغرامة قدرها ثلاثمائة جنيه»
شُهِق باسبارتو من الصدمة.
تابع القاضي قائلاً:
«فيلياس فوج، باعتبارك سيد الخادم، فأنت شريك في الجريمة. يُحكم عليك بالسجن ثمانية أيام وغرامة قدرها مائة وخمسون جنيهًا»
اهتزت قاعة المحكمة من وقع الصدمة. شعر فيكس بالنصر، إذ إن ثمانية أيام في السجن كفيلة بتدمير رحلة فوج بأكملها.

But Fogg stood, opened his travel-bag, and placed a thick packet of banknotes on the clerk's desk.

"I offer bail," he said simply.

The judge blinked.

"You have the right to do so, but the amount must be large enough to guarantee your return."

"Two thousand pounds," said Fogg.

The entire room gasped. Even the priests stared in disbelief. The sum was enormous — far more than the fine.

The judge could not refuse.

"Bail is accepted," he announced.



لكن فوج وقف، وفتح حقيبته، ووضع رزمة سميكة من النقود على مكتب الكاتب
وقال ببساطة: «أطلب الإفراج بكفالة.»
رمش القاضي بدهشة وقال:
«لك الحق في ذلك، لكن يجب أن يكون المبلغ كبيرًا بما يكفي لضمان عودتك»
فقال فوج: «ألفا جنيه.»
شُهِق جميع من في القاعة. حتى الكهنة نظروا بدهشة وعدم تصديق. كان المبلغ هائلًا - أكثر بكثير من الغرامة.
لم يستطع القاضي الرفض.
فأعلن: «تم قبول الكفالة.»

الهروب إلى سفينة رانجون Escape to the Rangoon

"Let us go," said Fogg quietly.

They left the courthouse at once and hurried to the dock. Fogg paid a coachman extra to race the carriage through the streets. The Rangoon was preparing to depart. They boarded just in time.

The priests, still furious, arrived moments too late. The ship had already begun to move.

Fix stood on the pier in despair. His carefully planned trap had collapsed in seconds. He had lost his chance in Calcutta, and if he missed Hong Kong as well, his mission would fail entirely.

There was only one thing left to do: follow Fogg onto the Rangoon.

Fix bought a ticket with his own money and boarded the ship at the last moment.



قال فوج بهدوء: «لنذهب»
غادروا المحكمة على الفور وأسرعوا إلى الميناء. دفع فوج للسائق مبلغًا إضافيًا ليقود العربة بسرعة في الشوارع. كانت سفينة رانجون تستعد للمغادرة. وصعدوا إليها في اللحظة المناسبة.
وصل الكهنة، وهم لا يزالون غاضبين، بعد فوات الأوان بلحظات. كانت السفينة قد بدأت تتحرك بالفعل
وقف فيكس على الرصيف بيأس. كانت خطته المحكمة قد انهارت في ثوان. لقد ضاعت فرصته في كلكتا، وإذا فاته هونج كونج أيضًا،
فستفشل مهمته تمامًا.
لم يتبق أمامه سوى خيار واحد: أن يتبع فوج إلى سفينة رانجون.
اشترى فيكس تذكرة بماله الخاص وصعد إلى السفينة في اللحظة الأخيرة.



On the Bay of Bengal في خليج البنغال

As the ship sailed into the Bay of Bengal, Aouda approached Fogg with concern.

"I hope you do not regret the trouble and cost I have caused," she said softly.

Fogg replied, «Madam, in saving you, I lost two days. I do not regret it. A human life is worth more than time or money.»

Aouda bowed her head gratefully. Passepartout wiped his eyes.

Fogg then went below deck to check his itinerary for Hong Kong, unaware that Fix was still following him — and more determined than ever.

The journey continued.



بينما كانت السفينة تبحر في خليج البنغال، اقتربت أودا من فوج بقلق.
قالت بهدوء: «أمل ألا تندم على المتاعب والتكاليف التي تسببت بها.»

رد فوج: «سيدتي، لقد خسرت يومين لإنقاذك، لا أندم على ذلك. حياة الإنسان أغلى من الوقت أو المال»
انحنى أودا برأسها شاكرة، ومسح پاسبارتو دموعه.

ثم نزل فوج إلى أسفل السفينة ليفحص جدول رحلته إلى هونغ كونج، دون أن يعلم أن فيكس لا يزال يتبعه - وأكثر عزيمة من أي وقت مضى.
واستمرت الرحلة.

أسئلة الكتاب المدرسي مجابة (Answered) Open -Ended & Critical Thinking Questions

Answer the following questions

1 Why do you think Phileas Fogg insisted that Aouda remain with him ?

He wanted to protect her and felt responsible for her safety .

لماذا تعتقد أن فيلياس فوج أصر على بقاء أودا معه ؟
لأنه أراد حمايتها وشعر بالمسؤولية عن سلامتها .

2 How do you think the bail amount changed the mood in the courtroom ?

It shocked everyone and turned surprise into silence and disbelief .

كيف تعتقد أن مبلغ الكفالة غير أجواء قاعة المحكمة ؟
صدم الجميع وحول الجو من التوتر إلى الدهشة وعدم التصديق .

3 What does Phileas Fogg's silence in court suggest about his confidence ?

It shows that he was calm, confident, and not afraid of the situation .

ماذا يدل صمت فيلياس فوج في المحكمة عن ثقته بنفسه ؟
يدل على أنه كان هادئًا وواثقًا وغير خائف من الموقف .

4 How do you think Detective Fix felt when the bail was accepted ?

He felt disappointed and frustrated because his plan had failed .

كيف تعتقد أن المفتش فيكس شعر عندما تم قبول الكفالة ؟
شعر بالإحباط وخيبة الأمل لأن خطته فشلت .

5 Why did Phileas Fogg say that saving a life was worth more than time ?

Because he believed that human life is more valuable than money or schedules .

لماذا قال فيلياس فوج إن إنقاذ حياة أغلى من الوقت ؟
لأنه كان يؤمن بأن حياة الإنسان أهم من المال أو الوقت .



6 How did Detective Fix manage to arrange the arrest in Calcutta even though he still lacked the official warrant from London ?

Fix used local authorities and colonial law to arrest Fogg without the official warrant .

كيف تمكن المحقق فيكس من ترتيب الاعتقال في كلكتا رغم أنه لم يكن يملك بعد أمر الاعتقال الرسمي من لندن ؟
استخدم فيكس السلطات المحلية والقانون الاستعماري لاعتقال فوج دون أمر رسمي .

7 What humanitarian explanation did Fogg give to Aouda for the time he lost in India ?
He said the delay was justified because it was spent saving a human life .

ما التفسير الإنساني الذي قدمه فوج لأودا عن الوقت الذي خسره في الهند ؟
قال إن التأخير مبرر لأنه أنقذ حياة إنسان .

8 Contrast Passepartout's emotional reaction during the arrest with Fogg's composed behavior .
Passepartout panicked emotionally, while Fogg stayed perfectly composed .

قارن بين رد فعل باسبارتو العاطفي أثناء الاعتقال وسلوك فوج الهادئ .
أصيب باسبارتو بالذعر، بينما ظل فوج هادئًا تمامًا .

9 How did Fix's failure to delay Fogg in Calcutta force him to change his strategy for the rest of the journey?

Fix decided to follow Fogg closely instead of relying on local arrests.

كيف أجبر فشل فيكس في تأخير فوج بكلكتا على تغيير استراتيجيته لبقية الرحلة ؟
قرر فيكس ملاحقة فوج بدل الاعتماد على الاعتقال المحلي .

10 What role did the Brahmin priests play in Fix's plan, and how did they react when Fogg secured a quick release by paying bail?

They accused Fogg, but were disappointed when he was released quickly on bail.

ما دور كهنة البراهمة في خطة فيكس، وكيف كان رد فعلهم عند إفراج فوج السريع بالكفالة ؟
اتهموا فوج، لكنهم شعروا بالإحباط عندما أفرج عنه سريعًا بالكفالة .

11 Why did Aouda feel personally responsible for the trouble Fogg faced in Calcutta ?
She believed the delay resulted from Fogg helping to save her .

لماذا شعرت أودا بالمسؤولية الشخصية عن المشكلة التي واجهها فوج في كلكتا ؟
اعتقدت أن المشكلة نتجت عن مساعدة فوج لها .

12 What does Phileas Fogg's reaction to the arrest tell you about his personality ?
It shows that he is calm, respectful of the law, and confident even in difficult situations .

ماذا يدل رد فعل فيليبس فوج تجاه القبض عليه عن شخصيته ؟
يدل على أنه هادئ، ويحترم القانون، وواثق من نفسه حتى في المواقف الصعبة .

13 In your opinion, was the judge's sentence fair or unfair? Why ?
In my opinion, the sentence was unfair because Fogg did not commit the crime himself .

برأيك، هل كان حكم القاضي عادلًا أم غير عادل؟ ولماذا ؟
في رأيي، كان الحكم غير عادل لأن فوج لم يرتكب الجريمة بنفسه .

14 If Fogg had not rescued Aouda, how might the journey have been different ?

The journey would have been faster and easier, but less meaningful and humane .

إذا لم ينقذ فوج أودا، كيف كان من الممكن أن تختلف الرحلة ؟
كانت الرحلة ستكون أسرع وأسهل، لكنها أقل إنسانية وقيمة .



Chapter (8)

Deception and Departure: Hong Kong and Yokohama

الخداع والرحيل - هونغ كونغ ويوكوهاما

Vocabulary

schooner (n)	مركب شراعي	dizzy (adj)	مصاب بدوار	troupe (n)	فرقة
panic (v)	يذعر	cannon (n)	مدفع	steamer (n)	باخرة
contract (n)	عقد	accusation (n)	اتهام	monsoon (n)	الرياح الموسمية
confusion (v)	يربك	release (v)	يطلق سراح	bravery (n)	شجاعة
transfer (v)	ينقل	dedication (n)	إخلاص	strike (v)	يضرب
bonus (n)	مكافأة	fire (v)	يطلق	confess (v)	يعترف
steamship (n)	سفينة بخارية	spot (v)	يلمع	confuse (v)	يربك
confession (v)	يعترف	persistent (adj)	عنيد / مثابر		
stowaway (n)	متسلل / راكب خلسة	desperation (n)	يأس		
half-conscious (adj)	شبه فاقد للوعي				

Idioms & Expressions التعبيرات والاصطلاحات

Perilously close	قريب جدًا من الخطر
Crisis of fate	لحظة مصيرية غير مؤكدة
Drop his facade	يكشف حقيقته
Adrift	بلا اتجاه أو دعم
Audacity of the proposition	جرأة شديدة في الاقتراح
Gambled £2,000	خاطر بمبلغ كبير



Chapter 8 in Points الفصل الثامن في نقاط

- ⚡ The steamship Rangoon carried Phileas Fogg, Aouda, Passepartout, and Fix across the Bay of Bengal toward the South China Sea.
حملت السفينة رانغون فيلياس فوج، وأودا، وباسبرتو، وفيكس عبر خليج البنغال نحو بحر الصين الجنوبي.
- ⚡ From the moment Fogg and his companions left Calcutta, Fogg knew he had lost exactly two days.
منذ مغادرتهم كالكوتا، علم فوج أنه قد خسر يومين بالضبط.
- ⚡ Aouda was impressed by Fogg's calmness and sense of duty.
أعجبت أودا بهدوء فوج وإحساسه بالمسؤولية.
- ⚡ Near the Strait of Malacca, rough monsoon weather struck, and the Rangoon was not one of the fast mail steamers that Fogg preferred.
ضرب طقس رياح موسمية شديد بالقرب من مضيق ملقا، ولم تكن رانغون من السفن السريعة المفضلة لدى فوج.
- ⚡ By the time the travelers passed Singapore, they were already a day behind schedule.
بحلول وقت مرورهم بسنغافورة، كانوا قد تأخروا يوقاً عن الجدول.
- ⚡ Fogg and his companions reached Hong Kong on November 6, one day later than planned.
وصل فوج ورفاقه إلى هونغ كونغ في السادس من نوفمبر، متأخرين بيوم عن الموعد المخطط.
- ⚡ Fogg's first concern was Aouda's safety, but Passepartout discovered that her cousin had moved to Holland.
كان أول ما فكر فيه فوج هو سلامة أودا، بينما اكتشف باسبرتو أن ابن عمها قد انتقل إلى هولندا.
- ⚡ Fogg decided that they would continue to Europe together, and Aouda became a permanent member of the journey.
قرر فوج أنهم سيكملون الرحلة إلى أوروبا معاً، وأصبحت أودا عضواً دائماً في الرحلة.
- ⚡ Fogg learned that the Carnatic had sailed earlier, and he had only 24 hours to find another way.
علم فوج أن سفينة «كارناتيك» قد أبحرت مبكراً، ولم يتبق له سوى ٢٤ ساعة لإيجاد طريقة أخرى.
- ⚡ Detective Fix revealed his identity, accused Fogg, and put medicine in Passepartout's tea to stop him from warning Fogg.
كشف المحقق فيكس عن هويته، واتهم فوج، ووضع دواء في شاي باسبرتو ليمنعه من تحذير فوج.
- ⚡ Fogg found the schooner Tankadere and made a dangerous proposal to reach Shanghai on time.
وجد فوج المركب الشراعي «تانكادير» وقدم اقتراحاً جريئاً للوصول إلى شنغهاي في الموعد.
- ⚡ At 8:00 p.m., Fogg and Aouda boarded the Tankadere, while Fix joined them urgently.
في الساعة ٨ مساءً، ركب فوج وأودا سفينة تانكادير، بينما انضم فيكس بسرعة.
- ⚡ Passepartout became a stowaway on the Carnatic, while the Tankadere fought through storms.
أصبح باسبرتو متسللاً على سفينة كارناتيك، بينما واجهت تانكادير العواصف.
- ⚡ Fogg fired the cannon to send an emergency signal, paid a generous bonus, and later reunited with Passepartout in Yokohama before sailing to San Francisco.
أطلق فوج المدفع لإرسال إشارة طوارئ، ودفع مكافأة سخية، ثم التقى لاحقاً بباسبرتو في يوكوهاما قبل التوجه إلى سان فرانسيسكو.
- ⚡ In Yokohama, Passepartout had joined a troupe of Japanese acrobats during a practice session to survive.
في يوكوهاما، انضم باسبرتو إلى فرقة بهلوانات يابانية أثناء تدريب من أجل البقاء.
- ⚡ After being released from his contract, Passepartout confessed that Fix was a detective.
بعد انتهاء عقده، اعترف باسبرتو بأن فيكس كان محققاً.
- ⚡ Fogg remained persistent and calm despite the constant delays and confusion.
ظل فوج مثابراً وهادئاً رغم التأخيرات المستمرة والارتباك.
- ⚡ The group continued their long journey with bravery and hope to reach their destination on time.
واصلت المجموعة رحلتها الطويلة بشجاعة وأمل للوصول إلى وجهتهم في الموعد المحدد.

القيم في هذا الفصل Values in This Chapter

Dedication to the goal

Fogg spends huge sums to reach Shanghai in four days.

الإخلاص للهدف

ينفق فوج مبالغ ضخمة ليصل إلى شنغهاي خلال أربعة أيام.

Gallantry and responsibility

Fogg promises to protect Aouda and guide her future.

الشهامة وتحمل المسؤولية

: يعد فوج بحماية أودا وتأمين مستقبلها.

**Loyalty and misplaced trust**

الولاء والثقة في غير محلها

Passepartout defends Fogg but trusts Fix, leading to disaster.

يدافع باسبارتو عن فوج لكنه يثق في فيكس، فيقع في كارثة.

Stoicism vs. desperation

الثبات مقابل اليأس

Fogg stays calm while Fix becomes reckless.

يظل فوج هادئًا بينما يتصرف فيكس بتهور.

ترجمة الفصل Chapter Translation

The Voyage on the Rangoon الرحلة على سفينة رانجون

The steam packet Rangoon, carrying Phileas Fogg, Aouda, Passepartout, and the persistent Detective Fix, cut across the Bay of Bengal toward the South China Sea. The voyage was planned to take eleven days. From the moment they left Calcutta, Fogg knew he had lost exactly two days—one to the elephant ride and one to the Calcutta arrest. As always, he remained calm, recording every delay with mathematical precision.



كانت السفينة البخارية رانجون، التي تقل فيلياس فوج وأودا وباسبارتو والمفتش فيكس المُصّر، تشق طريقها عبر خليج البنغال نحو بحر الصين الجنوبي. وكان من المخطط أن تستغرق الرحلة أحد عشر يومًا. ومنذ مغادرتهم كلكتا، كان فوج يعلم أنه خسر يومين كاملين، يوفقًا بسبب رحلة الفيل ويوفقًا بسبب القبض عليه في كلكتا. وكعادته، ظل هادئًا وسجل كل تأخير بدقة حسابية.

Aouda, now officially part of the group, grew increasingly impressed by his composure and sense of duty. Passepartout was still recovering from nearly being imprisoned and from watching his master spend huge sums of money without hesitation. Near the Strait of Malacca, rough monsoon weather struck. The Rangoon was not one of the fast steamers Fogg preferred, and the high seas slowed them down even further. By the time they passed Singapore, they were already a day behind schedule—dangerously close to missing their connection in Hong Kong.

كانت أودا، التي أصبحت الآن جزءًا رسميًا من المجموعة، تزداد إعجابًا بهدوئه وإحساسه بالمسؤولية. وكان باسبارتو لا يزال متأثرًا من اقترابه من السجن ورؤيته لسيدته ينفق مبالغ ضخمة دون تردد.

بالقرب من مضيق ملقا، واجهت السفينة طقسًا موسميًا عاصفًا. ولم تكن رانجون من السفن السريعة التي يفضلها فوج، وزادت الأمواج العالية من بطء الرحلة. وعند مرورهم بسنغافورة، كانوا قد تأخروا يوفقًا كاملًا عن الجدول، وأصبحوا قريبين جدًا من تفويت رحلتهم في هونغ كونج.

Arrival in Hong Kong – November 6 الوصول إلى هونغ كونج – ٦ نوفمبر

They reached Hong Kong on November 6—one day later than planned. Fogg's first concern was Aouda's safety. He asked Passepartout to find her cousin, a wealthy Parsi merchant. Passepartout returned quickly with bad news: the cousin had moved to Holland two years earlier. Aouda was now alone, without family.

Fogg immediately decided:

"We shall continue to Europe together. When we arrive in England, I shall endeavor to provide for your future."

Deeply moved, Aouda accepted. She was now a permanent member of the journey.



وصلوا إلى هونغ كونج في ٦ نوفمبر، متأخرين يوفقًا عن الموعد المحدد. وكان أول ما فكر فيه فوج

هو سلامة أودا. طلب من باسبارتو البحث عن ابن عمها، وهو تاجر بارسي ثري. عاد باسبارتو سريعًا بخبر سيئ، إذ كان ابن العم قد انتقل إلى هولندا منذ عامين. أصبحت أودا وحيدة بلا عائلة.

قرر فوج فورًا:

«سنكمل الرحلة إلى أوروبا معًا، وعند ما نصل إلى إنجلترا، سأحاول تأمين مستقبلك»

تأثرت أودا بشدة ووافقت، وأصبحت الآن عضوًا دائمًا في الرحلة.



The Missing Steamer – The Carnatic

السفينة المفقودة – كارنتيك

Fogg then went to the steamship office to confirm their places on the Carnatic, the ship to Yokohama. But he discovered the worst news yet: **The Carnatic had sailed twelve hours earlier.**

The next steamer would not depart for eight days—ruining the wager. Passepartout panicked, but Fogg remained steady, knowing they had only 24 hours to find another way across the Pacific.



ذهب فوج إلى مكتب السفن لتأكيد أماكنهم على سفينة كارنتيك المتجهة إلى يوكوهاما، لكنه اكتشف أسوأ الأخبار، فقد كانت كارنتيك قد أبحرت قبل اثنتي عشرة ساعة. لن تغادر سفينة أخرى إلا بعد ثمانية أيام، مما كان سيضيع الرهان. شعر باسبارتو بالذعر، لكن فوج ظل ثابتاً، مدركاً أن أمامهم أربعاً وعشرين ساعة فقط لإيجاد طريق آخر عبر المحيط الهادئ.

Fix's Desperate Plan

خطة فيكس اليائسة

Detective Fix, under enormous pressure, decided it was time to reveal his identity to Passepartout. He found the valet wandering in despair and lured him into an opium den.

There, Fix confessed that he was a detective and accused Fogg of robbing the Bank of England. Passepartout angrily denied the accusation but became confused and doubtful.

To stop him from warning Fogg, Fix drugged Passepartout's drink. Half-conscious, Passepartout tried to say, "The Carnatic! She leaves tonight!" but collapsed into a drugged sleep. Fix left him there, sure that Fogg would be delayed.



قرر المفتش فيكس، تحت ضغط شديد، أن يكشف عن هويته لباسبارتو. وجده تائهاً في حالة يأس، واستدرجه إلى وكر للأفيون. هناك، اعترف فيكس بأنه محقق واتهم فوج بسرقة بنك إنجلترا. أنكر باسبارتو التهمة بغضب، لكنه أصبح مرتبكاً ومشككاً. لمنعه من تحذير فوج، وضع فيكس مخدراً في شراب باسبارتو. حاول باسبارتو، وهو شبه فاقد للوعي، أن يقول: «كارنتيك! ستغادر الليلة!» لكنه سقط في نوم عميق بفعل المخدر. تركه فيكس هناك، واثقاً من أن فوج سيتأخر.

Fogg Finds an Alternative

فوج يجد حلاً بديلاً

Unaware of Fix's actions, Fogg searched the docks for any ship that could help. He finally found John Bunsby, captain of the tiny pilot boat Tankadere, a 40-ton schooner.

Fogg offered an enormous sum—100£ a day plus 200£ extra—to take him to Shanghai in four days. If he reached Shanghai on time, he could intercept the American steamer General Grant to San Francisco. It was a dangerous, almost impossible proposal, but Bunsby agreed.

At 8:00 p.m., Fogg and Aouda boarded the Tankadere. Fix suddenly appealed, pretending he urgently needed to travel to America and joined them. They set sail—leaving Passepartout behind.



دون أن يعلم بما فعله فيكس، بحث فوج في الميناء عن أي سفينة يمكن أن تساعد، وأخيراً وجد

جون بانسبي، قبطان القارب الصغير تانكادير، وهو مركب شراعي وزنه أربعون طناً.

عرض فوج مبلغاً ضخماً ١٠٠ جنيه في اليوم بالإضافة إلى مائتي جنيه كمكافأة – ليتم نقله إلى شنغهاي في غضون أربعة أيام. فإذا وصل إلى شنغهاي في الوقت المناسب، سيتمكن من اللحاق بالسفينة الأمريكية جنرال جرانت المتجهة إلى سان فرانسيسكو. كان اقتراحاً خطيراً، شبه مستحيل، لكن بانسبي وافق.

في الساعة الثامنة مساءً، صعد فوج وأودا إلى متن السفينة تانكادير. فجأة، تظاهر فيكس بأنه بحاجة ماسة للسفر إلى أمريكا، فانضم إليهما. أبحروا – تاركين باسبارتو خلفهم.



The Lost Valet الخادم المفقود

Passepartout woke hours later, drugged and dizzy. He stumbled to the docks and saw the Carnatic still there—it had returned temporarily for repairs. Believing he was in time, he boarded the ship, hid in a cabin, and fell asleep.

When the ship sailed again, Passepartout became an accidental stowaway on his way to Yokohama .

استيقظ باسبارتو بعد ساعات وهو مخدر ومزيج. تعثر إلى الميناء ورأى سفينة كارناتيك لا تزال هناك، إذ عادت مؤقتًا للإصلاحات. ظن أنه لحق بها، فصعد إليها واختبأ في إحدى الكبائن ونام. وعندما أبحرت السفينة مرة أخرى، أصبح باسبارتو مسافرًا خلسة في طريقه إلى يوكوهاما.



The Tankadere's Stormy Dash الاندفاع العاصف لسفينة تانكادير

Meanwhile, the small Tankadere fought through violent storms in the South China Sea. Fogg urged Bunsby to push the boat to its limits. Fix secretly hoped the storm would stop them.

On November 9, Bunsby spotted a huge ship in the distance — the American mail steamer General Grant. Fogg fired the schooner's small cannon to signal distress. The General Grant approached, and Fogg, Aouda, and Fix transferred aboard. Fogg immediately paid Bunsby a generous bonus .

في الوقت نفسه، كانت تانكادير الصغيرة تكافح عواصف عنيفة في بحر الصين الجنوبي. حث فوج بانسبي على دفع السفينة لأقصى طاقتها، بينما كان فيكس يأمل سرًا أن توقفهم العاصفة.

في ٩ نوفمبر، لمح بانسبي سفينة ضخمة في الأفق – السفينة البريدية الأمريكية جنرال جرانت. أطلق فوج مدفع السفينة الشراعية الصغير لإشارة استغاثة. اقتربت جنرال جرانت، وانتقل فوج وأودا وفيكس إلى متنها. وعلى الفور، دفع فوج مكافأة سخية لبانسبي.



Reunion in Yokohama اللقاء من جديد في يوكوهاما

When they reached Yokohama, Fogg searched everywhere for Passepartout. The valet, now penniless, had joined a group of Japanese acrobats called the "Long Noses" to survive.

Aouda recognized him during a performance. Passepartout saw Fogg, fell headlong in shock, and ran to him.

After being released from his contract, he confessed that Fix was a detective.

Fogg already knew.

With no time to waste, Fogg bought three tickets on the General Grant to San Francisco — one for himself, one for Aouda, and one for Fix. They set off across the Pacific, each holding a different secret purpose .

عندما وصلوا إلى يوكوهاما، بحث فوج في كل مكان عن باسبارتو. وكان الخادم، الذي أصبح بلا مال، قد انضم إلى فرقة بهلوانيين يابانيين تدعى «الأنوف الطويلة» ليتمكن من العيش.

تعرفت عليه أودا أثناء عرض. وعندما رأى باسبارتو فوج، سقط من شدة الصدمة وجري نحوه.

بعد أن تم فسخ عقده، اعترف بأنه فيكس كان محققًا.

لكن فوج كان يعلم ذلك مسبقًا.

وبلا وقت ليضيعه، اشترى فوج ثلاث تذاكر على متن جنرال جرانت إلى سان فرانسيسكو واحدة له، واحدة لأودا، واحدة لفيكس. انطلقوا عبر المحيط الهادئ، وكل واحد منهم يحمل غاية سرية مختلفة.





أسئلة الكتاب المدرسي مجابة (Answered) Open-Ended & Critical Thinking Questions

Answer the following questions

1 Why did Phileas Fogg feel responsible for Aouda ?

Because he had rescued her and felt morally responsible for her safety and future .

لماذا شعر فيلياس فوج بالمسؤولية تجاه أودا ؟
لأنه أنقذها وشعر بالمسؤولية الأخلاقية عن سلامتها ومستقبلها .

2 Why was missing the Carnatic a serious problem ?

Because the next ship would not leave for eight days, which would ruin Fogg's wager .

لماذا كان فوات سفينة كارنتيك مشكلة خطيرة ؟
لأن السفينة التالية لن تغادر إلا بعد ثمانية أيام، مما كان سيضيع رهان فوج .

3 Why did Passepartout panic when they missed the Carnatic, while Phileas Fogg remained calm and controlled ?

Passepartout panicked because he feared failure, while Fogg stayed calm because he trusted his planning and self-control .

لماذا شعر باسبارتو بالذعر عند فوات كارنتيك، بينما ظل فيلياس فوج هادئًا ومتحكمًا ؟
لأن باسبارتو خاف من الفشل، بينما ظل فوج هادئًا لأنه يثق في تخطيطه وضبطه لنفسه .

4 Why did Phileas Fogg reward John Bunsby generously ?

Because Bunsby accepted a dangerous mission and helped save the journey by reaching Shanghai on time .

لماذا كافأ فيلياس فوج جون بانسبي بسخاء ؟
لأنه قبل مهمة خطيرة وساعد في إنقاذ الرحلة بالوصول في الوقت المناسب .

5 Why do you think Passepartout joined the acrobats ?

Because he was alone, penniless, and needed a way to survive until he found Fogg again .

لماذا تعتقد أن باسبارتو انضم إلى لاعبي الأكروبات ؟
لأنه كان وحيدًا ومفلسًا واحتاج وسيلة للعيش حتى يعثر على فوج مرة أخرى .

6 What was the exact consequence of the Rangoon being one day late and the Carnatic leaving twelve hours early ?

Fogg missed the Carnatic, disrupting his carefully planned schedule .

ما النتيجة المباشرة لتأخر سفينة رانجون يومًا واحدًا ومغادرة الكارناتيك قبل الموعد باثنتي عشرة ساعة ؟
فاتت فوج سفينة الكارناتيك، مما عطل جدولته الزمني الدقيق .

7 Describe the tactics Fix used on Passepartout in the opium den to both reveal his identity and silence him .

Fix drugged Passepartout with opium to prevent him from warning Fogg .

صف الأساليب التي استخدمها فيكس مع باسبارتو في وكر الأفيون لكشف هويته وإسكاته ؟
خدر فيكس باسبارتو بالأفيون لمنعه من تحذير فوج .



- 8** Why did Fix change his plan from detaining Fogg in Hong Kong to joining him on the Tankadere ?
He feared losing track of Fogg before the warrant arrived .

لماذا غير فيكس خطته من احتجاز فوج في هونغ كونغ إلى الانضمام إليه على تانكادير ؟
خشى فيكس أن يفقد أثر فوج قبل وصول أمر الاعتقال .

- 9** What caused Passepartout to become separated from Fogg and Aouda ?
Passepartout was drugged by Fix and lost consciousness, so Fogg and Aouda left without him .

ما الذي تسبب في انفصال باسبارتو عن فوج وأودا ؟
تم تخدير باسبارتو بواسطة فيكس وفقد وعيه، فغادر فوج وأودا دونه .

- 10** Why did Fogg remain calm even after losing two days on the journey to Hong Kong ?
Fogg remained calm because he was disciplined and believed every problem could be solved logically .

لماذا ظل فوج هادئاً رغم خسارته يومين في الرحلة إلى هونغ كونغ ؟
ظل فوج هادئاً لأنه شخص منضبط ويؤمن بأن كل مشكلة لها حل منطقي .

- 11** Was Fix's decision to drug Passepartout justified by his belief that Fogg was a criminal?
Why or why not ?
No, it was not justified because drugging an innocent person is illegal and unethical .

هل كان قرار فيكس بتخدير باسبارتو مبرراً بسبب اعتقاده أن فوج مجرم ؟ ولماذا ؟
لا، لم يكن مبرراً لأن تخدير شخص بريء تصرف غير قانوني وغير أخلاقي .

Shaimaa Farghally
Shaimaa Farghally
Shaimaa Farghally



Chapter (9)

Pacific Passage and Peril – Japan to San Francisco

عبور المحيط الهادئ والخطر – من اليابان إلى سان فرانسيسكو

Vocabulary

factor (v)	يأخذ في الاعتبار	affection (n)	مودّة	secure (v)	يُحصل / يؤمن
reunion (n)	لقاء	immigrant (n)	مهاجر	injustice (n)	ظلم
outrage (n)	غضب	endure (v)	يتحمل	reveal (v)	يكشف
collide (v)	يصطدم	log (n)	سجل	express (n)	قطار سريع
blend (n)	مزيج	confront (v)	يواجه	shame (n)	خجل
chaos (n)	فوضى	shudder (n)	ارتعاش	recovery (n)	استعادة
priority (n)	أولوية	deception (n)	خداع	merchant (n)	تاجر
interruption (n)	توقف	torment (ed)(v)	يعذب		
desperate (adj)	يائس	adventurer (n)	مغامر		
confession (n)	اعتراف	acknowledge (v)	يعترف، يسلم بـ		
		reluctant (adj)	متردد		

Idioms & Expressions التعبيرات والاصطلاحات

Unflappable calm	هدوء لا يتزعزع تحت الضغط
Profound mental disarray	اضطراب نفسي شديد
Boomtown	مدينة سريعة النمو
Lightning-fast movement	حركة سريعة جدًا
A gentleman's code	مبادئ الشرف والسلوك الراقية

Chapter 9 in Points الفصل التاسع في نقاط

- The American mail steamer General Grant departed from Yokohama heading directly across the Pacific Ocean toward San Francisco.
غادرت الباخرة الأمريكية «جنرال جرانت» من يوكوهاما متجهة مباشرة عبر المحيط الهادئ نحو سان فرانسيسكو.
- The twenty-two-day crossing had been carefully factored into Phileas Fogg's schedule.
تم احتساب عبور الـ ٢٢ يومًا بعناية ضمن جدول فيلياس فوج.
- According to his plan, Phileas Fogg was due to arrive on December 2nd.
وفقًا لخطة، كان من المفترض أن يصل فوج في الثاني من ديسمبر.



- ⚡ Fogg received the valet's confession about Fix's identity with the same unshakable calm he applied to all crises.
استقبل فوج اعتراف الخادم بشأن هوية فيكس بنفس الهدوء الثابت الذي يواجه به كل الأزمات.
- ⚡ Phileas Fogg's only priority remained the recovery of lost time.
كانت أولوية فوج الوحيدة هي تعويض الوقت الضائع.
- ⚡ Passepartout was deeply distressed because he had expected outrage when revealing Fix's deception.
شعر باسبرتو بحزن شديد لأنه كان يتوقع غضبًا عندما كشف خداع فيكس.
- ⚡ Passepartout began to see Fogg's calmness not as oddness but as the profound courage of an innocent man wrongfully accused yet unbroken.
بدأ باسبرتو يرى هدوء فوج ليس كتصرف غريب، بل كدليل على شجاعة عميقة لرجل بريء تم اتهامه ظلماً، لكنه لم يُكسر.
- ⚡ Aouda observed the strained triangle between the three men, and her respect for Phileas Fogg deepened into genuine affection.
لاحظت أودا التوتر بين الرجال الثلاثة، وتحول احترامها لفوج إلى مودة حقيقية.
- ⚡ Fogg was now in an awkward and frustrating situation because he was traveling with the man who intended to arrest him.
كان فوج في موقف محرج ومزعج لأنه كان يسافر مع الرجل الذي كان ينوي اعتقاله.
- ⚡ Detective Fix was forced to endure the polite company of the man he intended to arrest.
اضطر المحقق فيكس لتحمل وجوده المهذب مع الرجل الذي ينوي اعتقاله.
- ⚡ Fix became a reluctant ally because he needed Fogg to succeed and return to British soil as fast as possible.
أصبح فيكس حليفاً متردداً لأنه احتاج إلى نجاح فوج والعودة بسرعة إلى الأراضي البريطانية.
- ⚡ The voyage itself was quiet and steady, and the General Grant was fast enough to make up some of the lost time.
كانت الرحلة هادئة ومستقرة، وكانت الباخرة «جنرال جرانت» سريعة بما يكفي لتعويض بعض الوقت الضائع.
- ⚡ The most notable event was their crossing of the 180th Meridian, and Passepartout became utterly confused when he insisted it was December 2nd.
كان الحدث الأبرز هو عبورهم خط الطول 180، حيث أصبح باسبرتو مرتبكاً تماماً عندما أصر على أنه الثاني من ديسمبر.
- ⚡ One dramatic moment occurred when the General Grant collided with a pod of whales, and the impact caused a violent shudder and forced a temporary stop.
حدث موقف درامي عندما اصطدمت السفينة بجموعة من الحيتان، مما تسبب في ارتجاج عنيف وتوقف مؤقت.
- ⚡ On the morning of December 3rd, the General Grant entered the booming port of San Francisco.
في صباح يوم 3 ديسمبر، دخلت الباخرة «جنرال جرانت» إلى ميناء سان فرانسيسكو الصاخب.
- ⚡ The Pacific crossing was complete, but the dangers of the vast American continent now awaited Phileas Fogg, Passepartout, Aouda, and Fix.
اكتمل عبور المحيط الهادئ، لكن مخاطر القارة الأمريكية الواسعة كانت في انتظار فوج وباسبرتو وأودا وفيكس.
- ⚡ Fogg continued to show restraint and calm, refusing to confront Fix in anger.
واصل فوج تحليله بالهدوء، رافضاً مواجهة فيكس بالغضب.
- ⚡ Despite the injustice and torment, Fogg acknowledged the truth and chose to focus on completing his mission.
رغم الظلم والعذاب، اعترف فوج بالحقيقة واختار التركيز على إتمام مهمته.

القيم في هذا الفصل Values in This Chapter

Honor above schedule

الشرف فوق الالتزام بالوقت

Fogg breaks his rigid principle of punctuality to confront Proctor for insulting Aouda.

يتخلى فوج عن صرامته في الالتزام بالوقت لمواجهة بروكتور دفاعاً عن أودا.

Bravery of innocence

شجاعة البراءة

Passepartout observes that Fogg's calmness shows courage, not weakness.

يدرك باسبرتو أن هدوء فوج شجاعة وليس ضعفاً.

Reluctant alliance

تحالف على مضض

Fix temporarily supports Fogg's speed because he needs him to reach Britain quickly.

يدعم فيكس سرعة فوج مؤقتاً لأنه يحتاجه للوصول إلى بريطانيا.

Growing affection

مشاعر متنامية

Aouda's respect for Fogg deepens as she witnesses his honor and selflessness.

يزداد احترام أودا لفوج عندما ترى شرفه ونبله.



Integrity under pressure

Fogg remains courteous even toward Fix, who intends to arrest him.

النزاهة تحت الضغط

يظل فوج مهذبًا حتى مع فيكس الذي ينوي القبض عليه.

Chapter Translation الفصل ترجمة

Pacific Passage and Peril عبور المحيط الهادئ والخطر

The American mail steamer General Grant, a powerful paddle-wheel vessel, departed from Yokohama on the evening of November 14th, heading directly across the Pacific Ocean toward San Francisco. The twenty-two-day crossing had been carefully factored into Phileas Fogg's schedule. According to his plan, he was due to arrive on December 2nd. The reunion between Fogg and Passepartout had been dramatic, yet Fogg received the valet's confession about Fix's identity with the same unshakable calm he applied to all crises. His only priority remained the recovery of lost time. Despite the delays in India and the chaos in Hong Kong, he calculated that their interception of the Carnatic in Shanghai had put them only slightly behind schedule.



غادرت السفينة البريدية الأمريكية جنرال جرانت، وهي سفينة قوية ذات عجلات جانبية، ميناء يوكوهاما مساء يوم ١٤ نوفمبر، متجهة مباشرة عبر المحيط الهادئ نحو سان فرانسيسكو. وكان عبور الاثنين والعشرين يومًا محسوبًا بدقة ضمن جدول فيلياس فوج. ووفقًا لخطة، كان من المقرر أن يصل في ٢ ديسمبر. كان اللقاء بين فوج وباسبارتو مؤثرًا، ومع ذلك تلقى فوج اعتراف الخادم بهوية فيكس بنفس الهدوء الثابت الذي يُظهره في كل الأزمات. وكان همه الوحيد هو تعويض الوقت الضائع. وعلي الرغم من التأخيرات في الهند والفوضى في هونغ كونج، حسب فوج أن لحاقهم بسفينة كارنتيك في شنغهاي جعلهم متأخرين قليلًا فقط عن الجدول.

Passepartout, however, was deeply distressed. He had expected outrage or confrontation when revealing Fix's treachery. Instead, Fogg simply acknowledged the information. The valet was tormented by shame for having been drugged by Fix and confused by his master's steady composure. He began to see Fogg's calmness not as coldness but as a form of moral courage.

Aouda observed the strained triangle between the three men. She had seen Fogg's honor under pressure, especially toward her. Her respect for him deepened into genuine affection.

أما باسبارتو فكان مضطربًا بشدة. فقد توقع غضبًا أو مواجهة عند كشفه خيانة فيكس، لكن فوج اكتفى بتقبل المعلومة. وكان الخادم يعاني من الخجل لأنه خُدر على يد فيكس، وارْتبك من هدوء سيده الثابت. وبدأ يدرك أن هدوء فوج ليس برودا، بل شجاعة أخلاقية. لاحظت أودا التوتر بين الرجال الثلاثة. وكانت قد رأت شرف فوج تحت الضغط، خاصة في تعامله معها. وتحول احترامها له إلى مشاعر صادقة أعمق.

Fix's Changed Strategy تغيير خطة فيكس

Detective Fix was now in an awkward and frustrating situation. He was traveling on Fogg's ticket and forced to endure the polite company of the very man he intended to arrest. Crucially, Fix knew that once they reached San Francisco, the British warrant—if it ever arrived—would no longer be valid. His only hope was to help Fogg return to British soil as fast as possible.

Thus, Fix became a reluctant ally. Ironically, he now needed Fogg to succeed.



وجد المفتش فيكس نفسه في موقف محرج ومزعج. كان يسافر بتذكرة فوج، ومضطرًا لتحمل صحبة الرجل الذي ينوي القبض عليه. والأهم من ذلك، أن فيكس كان يعلم أنه عند وصولهم إلى سان فرانسيسكو، فإن أمر القبض البريطاني، إن وصل أصلًا، لن يكون ساريًا. وكان أمله الوحيد أن يساعد فوج على العودة إلى الأراضي البريطانية بأسرع وقت. وهكذا أصبح فيكس حليفًا على مضض. وبشكل ساخر، أصبح الآن بحاجة إلى نجاح فوج.



The Pacific Crossing عبور المحيط الهادئ

Shaimaa Farghally

The voyage itself was quiet and steady. The General Grant was fast enough to make up some of the lost time. Fogg spent much of the journey playing whist with Aouda and, occasionally, with Fix. Aouda proved to be a quick learner, and the games brought an unexpected sense of domestic calm to the long crossing.

The most notable event was their crossing of the 180th Meridian, the theoretical International Date Line. Fogg carefully recorded speed and distance but failed to notice that traveling eastward meant gaining an hour every 15 degrees of longitude.

Passepartout stubbornly kept his watch on London time and became utterly confused when he insisted it was December 2nd while the ship's log already indicated December 3rd.



كانت الرحلة نفسها هادئة ومستقرة. وكانت جنرال جرانانت سريعة بما يكفي لتعويض بعض الوقت الضائع. قضى فوج معظم الرحلة في لعب الويست مع أودا وأحياناً مع فيكس. وأثبتت أودا أنها سريعة التعلم، وجلبت الألعاب شعوراً غير متوقع بالهدوء الأسري خلال الرحلة الطويلة.

وكان الحدث الأبرز هو عبور خط الطول ١٨٠، وهو خط التاريخ الدولي النظري. سجل فوج السرعة والمسافة بدقة، لكنه لم يلاحظ أن السفر شرقاً يعني كسب ساعة كل ١٥ درجة طول.

أصر باسبارتو على إبقاء ساعته على توقيت لندن، وازداد ارتباكاً عندما أكد أن اليوم هو ٢ ديسمبر، بينما كان سجل السفينة يشير إلى ٣ ديسمبر.

The Incident with the Whale حادثة الحوت

One dramatic moment occurred during a fog bank when the General Grant collided with a pod of whales. The impact caused a violent shudder and forced a temporary halt. Fogg noted the lost three hours in his log. Fix, now desperate to avoid delays, grew increasingly anxious.

وقعت لحظة درامية أثناء مرور السفينة في ضباب كثيف، حيث اصطدمت جنرال جرانانت بمجموعة من الحيتان. تسبب الاصطدام في اهتزاز عنيف وتوقف مؤقت. سجل فوج فقدان ثلاث ساعات في دفتره، بينما أصبح فيكس، الساعي لتجنب أي تأخير، أكثر قلقاً.



الوصول إلى سان فرانسيسكو - ٣ ديسمبر Arrival in San Francisco - December 3rd

On the morning of December 3rd, although Fogg still believed it to be December 2nd, the General Grant steamed through the Golden Gate and entered the booming port of San Francisco. The city was a chaotic blend of wagons, trams, merchants, gold-seeking adventurers, and immigrants from all corners of the world.

Fogg remained unimpressed. He had one goal only: reach the train station.

في صباح يوم ٣ ديسمبر، وعلى الرغم من أن فوج كان لا يزال يعتقد أنه ٢ ديسمبر، دخلت جنرال جرانانت ميناء سان فرانسيسكو عبر البوابة الذهبية. وكانت المدينة مزيجاً فوضوياً من العربات والترام والتجار والمغامرين الباحثين عن الذهب والمهاجرين من كل أنحاء العالم. ظل فوج غير متأثر، وكان له هدف واحد فقط، وهو الوصول إلى محطة القطار.





The Political Riot الشغب السياسي

Their carriage soon became trapped in the middle of a riot connected to a heated election rally. A violent crowd surged through the streets, overturning vehicles and shouting. One towering man, notorious agitator Colonel Stamp Proctor, approached their carriage, mistaking it for that of a political opponent.

Proctor hurled insults, including vulgar remarks about Aouda. In an instant of startling speed, Fogg stepped from the carriage.

"Sir," he said, "you are insulting a lady. Apologize at once."

Proctor laughed mockingly and insulted them again. Fogg, without lifting a hand, presented his card.

A duel was formally arranged for December 4th at 10:00 a.m. at the Presidio.



سرعان ما علقت عربتهم وسط شغب مرتبط بتجمع انتخابي محتدم. اندفع حشد عنيف في الشوارع يقلب العربات ويصرخ. واقترب رجل ضخم يُدعى الكولونيل ستامب بروكتور، وهو محرض سيئ السمعة، من العربة ظنًا أنها تخص خصمًا سياسيًا. أطلق بروكتور إهانات، من بينها تعليقات بذئنة عن أودا. وفي لحظة خاطفة، نزل فوج من العربة. قال فوج: «يا سيدي، أنت تهين سيدة. اعتذر فوزًا.» ضحك بروكتور ساخراً وأهانهم مرة أخرى. عندها قدم فوج بطاقته بهدوء دون أن يرفع يده. تم ترتيب مباراة رسميًا يوم ٤ ديسمبر في الساعة العاشرة صباحًا في بريسيديو.

الرحيل إلى نيويورك Departure for New York

The riot cleared, and they reached the train station. Fogg secured tickets for the Transcontinental Express, scheduled to take them across the continent to New York in seven days.

Just as the train was preparing to depart, a representative of Colonel Proctor arrived. The duel was postponed, as Proctor himself needed to travel east.

With the matter deferred, the train departed. Fogg calmly opened his diary and wrote:

"San Francisco, December 3rd, 8:00 p.m. – Duel postponed."

Aouda was moved by Fogg's defense of her honor. Fix, meanwhile, felt relieved—any harm to Fogg would ruin his hopes of making the arrest in England.

The Pacific crossing was complete, but the dangers of the vast American continent now awaited them .



انتهى الشغب ووصلوا إلى محطة القطار. وحجز فوج تذكار القطار العابر للقارات، المقرر أن ينقلهم إلى نيويورك خلال سبعة أيام. وبينما كان القطار يستعد للمغادرة، وصل ممثل عن الكولونيل بروكتور، وأُجلت المباراة لأن بروكتور نفسه كان عليه السفر شرقًا. وبعد تأجيل الأمر، انطلق القطار. فتح فوج دفتر يومياته بهدوء وكتب: «سان فرانسيسكو، ٣ ديسمبر، الساعة ٨ مساءً – تأجيل المباراة.» تأثرت أودا بدفاع فوج عن شرفها، بينما شعر فيكس بالارتياح، إذ إن أي أذى يصيب فوج كان سيُفسد آماله في القبض عليه في إنجلترا. اكتمل عبور المحيط الهادئ، لكن أخطار القارة الأمريكية الشاسعة كانت بانتظارهم.

Shaimaa Farghally

Shaimaa Farghally



أسئلة الكتاب المدرسي مجابة (Answered) Open -Ended & Critical Thinking Questions

Answer the following questions

- 1 Why is Fogg unimpressed by San Francisco ?**
 Fogg was focused only on reaching the train station and completing his journey, not on the city itself .
 لماذا لم يتأثر فوج بسان فرانسيسكو ؟
 كان فوج مركزاً فقط على الوصول إلى محطة القطار وإكمال رحلته، وليس على المدينة نفسها .
- 2 Explain why Detective Fix decided to aid Fogg in speeding up the journey across the Pacific ?**
 Fix wanted Fogg to return to British soil quickly because the warrant would soon be invalid in San Francisco .
 فسر لماذا قرر المفتش فيكس مساعدة فوج على تسريع الرحلة عبر المحيط الهادئ ؟
 أراد فيكس أن يعود فوج سريعاً إلى الأراضي البريطانية لأن أمر القبض سيكون غير صالح قريباً في سان فرانسيسكو .
- 3 How does Fix's change of strategy reflect irony ?**
 Ironically, Fix, who wanted to arrest Fogg, now had to help him succeed to achieve his own goal .
 كيف يعكس تغيير خطة فيكس السخرية أو المفارقة ؟
 بشكل ساخر، كان فيكس، الذي أراد القبض على فوج، مضطراً الآن لمساعدته على النجاح لتحقيق هدفه الخاص .
- 4 What does Fogg's diary symbolize in this chapter ?**
 The diary symbolizes Fogg's careful planning, control, and focus on time throughout the journey .
 ماذا يرمز دفتر يوميات فوج في هذا الفصل ؟
 يرمز دفتر اليوميات إلى تخطيط فوج الدقيق وسيطرته وتركيزه على الوقت طوال الرحلة .
- 5 What made Fogg risk a crucial time delay by challenging Colonel Stamp Proctor to a duel ?**
 His strong sense of honor compelled him to act .
 ما الذي جعل فوج يخاطر بتأخير زمني خطير بتحدي العقيد ستامب بروكتور لمبارزة ؟
 دفعه إحساسه القوي بالشرف إلى التصرف .
- 6 How did the completion of the Transcontinental Railroad affect Fogg's calculations for the overall journey ?**
 It allowed faster and more predictable travel across America .
 كيف أثر اكتمال السكك الحديدية العابرة للقارة على حسابات فوج للرحلة ؟
 سمح بسفر أسرع وأكثر انتظاماً عبر أمريكا .
- 7 Analyze the irony of Detective Fix needing Fogg to succeed and return to England as quickly as possible .**
 Fix's mission depended on the man he pursued winning .
 حلل مفارقة احتياج المحقق فيكس لنجاح فوج وعودته السريعة إلى إنجلترا .
 اعتمدت مهمة فيكس على نجاح الرجل الذي يطاردّه .



8 Discuss the concept of honor as defined by Phileas Fogg, using the incident with Colonel Proctor as evidence .

Honor for Fogg demanded action regardless of consequences .

ناقش مفهوم الشرف لدى فيليبس فوج باستخدام حادثة العقيد بروكتور دليلاً .
كان الشرف لدى فوج يتطلب التصرف مهما كانت العواقب .

9 Why did Verne choose the chaotic, lawless environment of San Francisco, rather than a more stable city, to begin the American leg of the journey ?

To emphasize contrast, danger, and unpredictability .

لماذا اختار فيرن بيئة سان فرانسيسكو الفوضوية بدل مدينة أكثر استقراراً لبدء الرحلة الأمريكية ؟
لإبراز التناقض والخطر وعدم التوقع .

10 What challenges did the General Grant face during its journey across the Pacific ?

The ship faced fog, collisions with whales, and the pressure to make up lost time .

ما التحديات التي واجهتها سفينة «جنرال جرانت» خلال رحلتها عبر المحيط الهادئ ؟
واجهت السفينة ضباباً، اصطدامات بالحيات، وضغطاً لتعويض الوقت الضائع .

11 How does the journey across the Pacific highlight the theme of time versus humanity in the novel ?

Fogg prioritized saving lives and staying calm, showing human values are more important than strict schedules .

كيف تبرز الرحلة عبر المحيط الهادئ موضوع الوقت مقابل الإنسانية في الرواية ؟
فُضِّل فوج إنقاذ الأرواح والبقاء هادئاً، مما يُظهر أن القيم الإنسانية أهم من الالتزام الصارم بالجدول الزمنية .

Shaimaa Farghally
Shaimaa Farghally
Shaimaa Farghally



Chapter (10)

Rail Across America – San Francisco to New York

الرحلة بالقطار عبر أمريكا – من سان فرانسيسكو إلى نيويورك

Vocabulary

intervene (v)	يتدخل	delight (v)	يهيج	rickety (adj)	متداع
discharge (v)	يُطلق	deepen (v)	يعمق	intensity (n)	شدة
monitor (v)	يراقب	herd (n)	قطيع	visible (adj)	مرئي / واضح
scouts (n)	أفراد الاستكشاف	reverse (v)	يعكس	agility (n)	رشاقة
motionless (adj)	ساكن	suspension (n)	تعليق		
momentum (n)	قوة دافعة	indifferent (adj)	غير مبالي		
berth (n)	سرير (في قطار/سفينة)	gratitude (n)	امتنان		

Idioms & Expressions التعبيرات والاصطلاحات

Hanging by a thread	في خطر شديد أو على وشك الفشل
A marvel of engineering	إنجاز هندسي مذهل
Hold one's ground	التمسك بالموقف وعدم التراجع
In the heat of the moment	التصرف تحت ضغط أو انفعال شديد
A narrow escape	نجاة بفارق بسيط

Chapter 10 in Points الفصل العاشر في نقاط

- The departure of the Transcontinental Express from San Francisco on December 3rd marked the start of Fogg's hardest land journey.
بداية انطلاق قطار «ترانزكونتينتال إكسبرس» من سان فرانسيسكو في ٣ ديسمبر كانت بداية أصعب رحلة برية لفوج.
- The Transcontinental Railroad was praised as a marvel of modern engineering.
تم الاحتفاء بسكة الحديد العابرة للقارات كأجوبة من أعاجيب الهندسة الحديثة.
- The group occupied a wide section with windows, comfortable berths, and a dining car.
احتلت المجموعة جزءاً واسعاً من القطار، بنوافذ مريحة، وأسرة، وعربة طعام.
- Fogg spent hours reviewing timetables and maps with full concentration.
قضى فوج ساعات بمراجعة الجداول والخرائط بأقصى درجات التركيز.
- Aouda quietly watched Fogg, feeling gratitude for all he had done.
راقبت أودا فوج بهدوء، وهي تشعر بالامتنان لكل ما فعله.
- Passepartout delighted in the changing American scenery.
استمتع باسبرتو بجمال المناظر الطبيعية الأمريكية المتنوعة.
- Fix monitored Fogg silently, hiding his inner discomfort.
راقب فيكس فوج بصمت، مخفياً توتره الداخلي.



- 💡 The train climbed the snowy Sierra Nevada mountains, passing through high elevations.
صعد القطار جبال سييرا نيفادا المغطاة بالثلوج، ماراً بمرتفعات عالية.
- 💡 Passepartout was amazed by the forests and cliffs, while Fogg focused on calculations.
انبهر باسبرتو بالغابات الشاسعة والمنحدرات، بينما كان فوج منشغلاً بالحسابات.
- 💡 In Nevada and Utah, unstable bridges and tracks delayed the train.
في نيفادا ويوتا، تسببت الجسور الضعيفة والسكة المهترئة في تأخير القطار.
- 💡 A large herd of buffalo blocked the train for three hours outside Salt Lake City.
أوقف قطع ضخم من الجواميس القطار ثلاث ساعات خارج سولت ليك سيتي.
- 💡 Fogg stayed calm, recording the lost time, while Passepartout and Fix were anxious.
ظل فوج هادئاً وسجل الوقت الضائع، بينما شعر باسبرتو وفيكس بالقلق.
- 💡 The train crossed Platte River Bridge at full speed, which collapsed behind it.
عبر القطار جسر نهر بلات بسرعة كبيرة، ثم انهار الجسر خلفه.
- 💡 Near Julesburg, Sioux warriors attacked the train, and Passepartout detached the engine.
قرب جولسبيرغ، هاجم محاربو قبيلة سيو القطار، وفصل باسبرتو المحرك لإنقاذ الركاب.
- 💡 When Passepartout was captured, Fogg chose loyalty over time and went to save him.
عندما أسر باسبرتو، فضل فوج الولاء على الجدول الزمني وانطلق لإنقاذه.
- 💡 Scouts confirmed that Passepartout had been taken across the river.
أكد الكشاف أن باسبرتو قد نُقل عبر النهر.
- 💡 Fogg led the rescue mission with speed, agility, and courage.
قاد فوج مهمة الإنقاذ بسرعة، ورشاقة، وشجاعة.
- 💡 After the rescue, the group reversed direction to rejoin the train and resume the journey.
بعد إنقاذ باسبرتو، عكست المجموعة طريقها للعودة إلى القطار واستكمال الرحلة.

القيم في هذا الفصل Values in This Chapter

Loyalty over personal gain الوفاء فوق المصلحة الشخصية	Fogg puts friendship first, abandoning his schedule to rescue Passepartout. يضع فوج الصداقة أولاً، متخلياً عن جدوله لإنقاذ باسبارتو.
Courage in crisis الشجاعة وقت الأزمات	Fogg joins the defense against the Sioux immediately, showing bravery under danger. ينضم فوج للدفاع فوراً ضد السيو، مُظهراً شجاعة في الخطر.
Honor above convenience الشرف فوق الراحة	Fogg refuses to ignore Proctor's insult to Aouda, standing up for what is right. يرفض فوج تجاهل إهانة بروكتور لأودا ويدافع عن الحق.
Compassion and gratitude الرحمة والامتنان	Aouda continues to support and encourage Fogg emotionally throughout the journey. تواصل أودا دعم فوج وتشجيعه نفسياً طوال الرحلة.
Unity in adversity الوحدة في الشدائد	Fogg, Fix, and Proctor temporarily set aside differences to protect the passengers. يتجاوز فوج وفيكس وبروكتور خلافاتهم مؤقتاً لحماية الركاب.

Shaimaa Farghally
Shaimaa Farghally
Shaimaa Farghally



ترجمة الفصل Chapter Translation

الرحلة بالقطار عبر أمريكا Rail Across America

The departure of the Transcontinental Express from San Francisco on the evening of December 3rd signaled the start of Phileas Fogg's most demanding overland journey—3,786 miles of track stretching across mountains, deserts, and prairies toward New York. The newly completed Transcontinental Railroad was celebrated as a marvel of modern engineering, capable of carrying passengers across the continent in just seven days, provided no misfortune intervened.



كان انطلاق القطار العابر للقارات من سان فرانسيسكو مساء ٣ ديسمبر إيذاناً ببداية أصعب رحلة برية في حياة فيليبس فوج، حيث تمتد السكك لمسافة ٣,٧٨٦ ميلاً عبر الجبال والصحاري والسهول نحو نيويورك، وكان خط السكك الحديدية الجديد يُعد إنجازاً هندسياً عظيماً، قادراً على نقل الركاب عبر القارة خلال سبعة أيام، إذا لم يحدث ما يعوق الرحلة.

The group occupied a spacious compartment with wide windows, comfortable berths, and access to a dining car—a welcome change from the cramped pilot boat and the earlier cabins of earlier voyages. Fogg spent the first hours examining timetables and railway maps, maintaining his unwavering attention to precision. Aouda watched him quietly, understanding the weight of the schedule but also feeling the warmth of gratitude for all he had done. Passepartout, happy to be on solid ground, delighted in the unfolding American scenery. Fix, meanwhile, sat tensely nearby, monitoring Fogg with an unease he tried to hide.

استقر الفريق في مقصورة واسعة ذات نوافذ كبيرة وأسرّة مريحة، مع إمكانية الوصول إلى عربة الطعام، وهو تغيير مرحّب به بعد ضيق القارب الصغير ومقصورات الرحلات السابقة. أمضى فوج الساعات الأولى في فحص الجداول الزمنية وخرائط السكك الحديدية، محافظاً على دقته المعتادة. راقبته أودا في صمت، مدركة ضغط الوقت، لكنها شعرت أيضاً بالامتنان لما فعله من أجلها. وكان باسبارتو سعيداً بالعودة إلى اليابسة، مستمتعاً بالمشاهد الأمريكية المتتابعة. أما فيكس فجلس قريباً بتوتر، يراقب فوج بقلق حاول إخفاؤه.

عبر جبال سييرا نيفادا Through the Sierra Nevada

The train ascended through the Sierra Nevada mountains, passing Sacramento and climbing through snowy high passes. Passepartout was amazed by the vast pine forests and steep cliffs. The smooth crossing brought him comfort after the unpredictable dangers of sea travel. Fogg observed the landscape but remained absorbed in his calculations.



صعد القطار عبر جبال سييرا نيفادا، ماراً بمدينة ساكرامنتو ومتسلقاً الممرات الجبلية الثلجية. أعجب باسبارتو بالغابات الصنوبرية الواسعة والمنحدرات الحادة. وقد منحه العبور السلس شعوراً بالراحة بعد مخاطر السفر البحري غير المتوقعة. أما فوج فكان يلاحظ المناظر، لكنه ظل منشغلاً بحساباته.

تأخيرات في الصحراء Delays in the Desert

Once the train descended into the lonely expanses of Nevada and Utah, problems began. Much of the track had been built quickly, resulting in weak bridges, unstable rails, and long stretches vulnerable to sandstorms, wildlife, and sudden weather changes. The first major delay occurred outside Salt Lake City. A massive herd of buffalo thundered across the track, blocking the rails from horizon to horizon. The engineers tried whistles, shouts, and even discharging steam, but the animals were indifferent. For three hours, the train stood motionless. Passepartout grew visibly anxious. Fix, who needed Fogg to reach England as soon as possible, was silently tormented by each passing minute.





عندما دخل القطار المساحات الشاسعة والمنعزلة في نيفادا ويوتا، بدأت المشكلات تظهر. فقد أنشئت أجزاء كثيرة من السكة بسرعة، مما أدى إلى جسور ضعيفة وقضبان غير مستقرة ومناطق عرضة للعواصف الرملية والحيوانات البرية والتغيرات المفاجئة في الطقس. وقع أول تأخير كبير خارج مدينة سولت ليك، حيث اندفع قطيع ضخم من الجاموس عبر السكة، مغلقًا الطريق من الأفق إلى الأفق. حاول المهندسون استخدام الصفارات والصيحات وحتى إطلاق البخار، لكن الحيوانات لم تتأثر. توقف القطار ثلاث ساعات كاملة. بدا القلق واضحًا على باسبارتو، بينما كان فيكس، الذي يحتاج إلى وصول فوج سريعًا إلى إنجلترا، يتعذب بصمت مع كل دقيقة تمر.

قلق أودا المتزايد Aouda's Growing Concern

Throughout the desert journey, Aouda's affection for Fogg deepened. She saw the pressure on his shoulders and the sacrifices he had made—not once for himself, but always for her and for honor. She tried gently to encourage him, offering moments of conversation and comfort. Fogg responded politely, but his mind never left the ticking schedule .

خلال الرحلة الصحراوية، تعمقت مشاعر أودا تجاه فوج. رأت الضغط الواقع عليه والتضحيات التي قدّمها، ليس لنفسه أبدًا، بل من أجلها ومن أجل الشرف. حاولت تشجيعه بلطف، مقدمة لحظات من الحديث والدعم. وكان فوج يرد بأدب، لكن عقله لم يبتعد قط عن الساعة التي لا تتوقف.



عودة الكولونيل بروكتور The Return of Colonel Proctor

At Kearney, Nebraska, the train paused briefly. Fogg and Aouda stepped onto the platform for fresh air when a familiar voice cut through the crowd. Colonel Stamp Proctor—fiery, confrontational, and still enraged from the San Francisco incident—approached.

“So, sir, you have not forgotten your promise?” he sneered.

“I have not forgotten,” Fogg replied calmly, prepared to defend Aouda’s honor once more .

في مدينة كيرني بولاية نبراسكا، توقف القطار توقفًا قصيرًا. نزل فوج وأودا إلى الرصيف لاستنشاق الهواء، حين اخترق صوت مألوف الحشد. كان الكولونيل ستامب بروكتور، الغاضب والمشغوب، لا يزال محتدًا منذ حادثة سان فرانسيسكو، يقترب منهما.



قال بروكتور بسخرية: «إذًا يا سيدي، ألم تنس وعدك؟»

أجاب فوج بهدوء: «لم أنس»، مستعدًا للدفاع عن شرف أودا مرة أخرى.

A crowd gathered. Proctor demanded an immediate duel on the open prairie. Fix, panicked at the thought of further delay, attempted to intervene. The conductor, realizing the danger of a public riot, forced them back onto the train. Proctor promised the matter was far from settled.

Aouda saw again how deeply Fogg’s code of honor ran, even against his rigid devotion to time. Her admiration for him grew .

تجمع حشد من الناس. طالب بروكتور بمبارزة فورية في السهل المفتوح. شعر فيكس بالذعر من احتمال تأخير جديد وحاول التدخل. وأجبر قائد القطار الجميع على العودة إلى القطار، مدركًا خطر الشغب. وتعهّد بروكتور بأن الأمر لم ينتهِ بعد. رأت أودا مرة أخرى مدى عمق التزام فوج بمبادئ الشرف، حتى عندما تتعارض مع التزامه الصارم بالوقت. وازداد إعجابها به.



The Platte River Bridge جسر نهر بلات

The train sped across the plains of the Midwest until it reached the rickety suspension bridge over the Platte River near Fort Kearney. Built in haste, weakened by weather, and visibly unstable, the bridge posed a grave danger. The conductor made a daring proposal: crossing at normal speed risked collapse.

"If the train crosses at full speed, momentum might prevent the structure from falling beneath it."

Fogg immediately supported the plan. "Let us proceed at full speed. If the bridge must fall, it will fall behind us."

اندفع القطار عبر سهول الغرب الأوسط حتى وصل إلى جسر معلق متهالك فوق نهر بلات قرب فورت كيرني. كان الجسر قد بُني على عجل، وأضعفه الطقس، وبدا غير مستقر بشكل واضح. قدم قائد القطار اقتراحاً جريئاً، إذ إن العبور بالسرعة المعتادة قد يؤدي إلى الانهيار.

قال القائد: «إذا عبر القطار بأقصى سرعة، فقد تمنع قوة الاندفاع انهيار الجسر تحته. دعم فوج الخطة فوراً وقال: «لننتقل بأقصى سرعة. وإذا كان الجسر سيسقط، فسيسقط خلفنا.»

Many passengers were horrified, but the decision was made. The engine reversed briefly, then surged forward with trembling intensity. The train shot across the bridge in seconds. Moments later, after the last carriage reached solid ground, the bridge collapsed into the raging river below.

Passepartout and Aouda trembled. Fogg checked his watch and wrote, "Slight vibration. No delay."

شعر العديد من الركاب بالرعب، لكن القرار اتخذ. عاد القطار قليلاً ثم اندفع للأمام بقوة مرتجفة. عبر القطار الجسر في ثوانٍ. وبعد لحظات من وصول آخر عربة إلى اليابسة، انهار الجسر في النهر الهائج بالأسفل. ارتجف باسبارتو وأودا، بينما نظر فوج إلى ساعته وكتب: «اهتزاز بسيط. لا تأخير.»



The Sioux Attack هجوم قبيلة السيو

Near Julesburg, Colorado, danger returned in its most terrifying form. The stillness of the prairie was shattered by the war cries of Sioux warriors. Mounted fighters rode alongside the speeding train, leaping onto the moving carriages with astonishing agility.

Chaos erupted. The Sioux, enraged by the railroad intruding on their lands, swept through the cars. Passepartout rushed back and called for help.

Fogg, steady and fearless, armed himself with a revolver and joined the defense. Fix fought alongside him, driven by duty and desperation.

قرب جولدسبيرغ في كولورادو، عاد الخطر بأشد صورته رعباً. حطمت صيحات الحرب لمحاربي السيو هدوء السهول. وركب المقاتلون الخيول بمحاذاة القطار، قافزين إلى العربات المتحركة بمهارة مذهلة.

اندلعت الفوضى. اجتاحت محاربي السيو العربات غضباً من اختراق السكك الحديدية لأراضيهم. اندفع باسبارتو طالباً النجدة. تسلم فوج بمسدس وانضم للدفاع بثبات وشجاعة. وقاتل فيكس إلى جانبه مدفوعاً بالواجب والياس.

Passepartout, seeing no weapon available, took a bold risk. Crawling beneath the train, he managed to uncouple the engine and the first two cars from the rest. The engine, carrying the bulk of the passengers, sped forward to safety.

But the remaining carriages—where Fogg, Aouda, and Fix were—slowed and stopped. The Sioux quickly overpowered the defenders. In the confusion, Passepartout was seized and taken away as a captive.

Seeing him as a valuable prize, the Sioux retreated into the darkness.

لم يجد باسبارتو سلاحاً، فخاطر بجراة. زحف أسفل القطار وتمكن من فصل المحرك والعربتين الأماميتين عن بقية القطار. اندفع المحرك، حاملاً معظم الركاب، إلى بر الأمان.

لكن العربات المتبقية، حيث كان فوج وأودا وفيكس، تباطأت وتوقفت. سرعان ما سيطر محاربي السيو على المدافعين. وفي خضم الفوضى، أسر باسبارتو واثقيده بعيداً. وبعد أن راهوه غنيمة ثمينة، انسحبوا في الظلام.





Fogg's Heroic Decision قرار فوج البطولي

As silence returned to the prairie, it became clear that Passepartout had been taken. The remaining passengers advised Fogg to wait for the returning engine and military reinforcements.

But Fogg's answer was immediate and unwavering:

"I will not leave him. I will not abandon my servant."

عندما عاد الهدوء إلى السهول، اتضح أن باسبارتو قد أُسر. ونصح الركاب فوج بالانتظار حتى يعود المحرك ومعه التعزيزات العسكرية. لكن رد فوج كان فوراً وحاسماً: لن أتركه. لن أتخلي عن خادمي.



Colonel Proctor, having witnessed Fogg's courage, temporarily set aside their duel. With thirty soldiers and scouts from Fort Kearney, a rescue plan was formed. Fogg instructed Aouda to remain with Fix and the train and addressed the detective directly: "Mr. Fix, I shall go. You must stay with Aouda until I return."

Fix reluctantly agreed.

Fogg paid the scouts generously and set off into the wilderness. He had to reach New York by December 11th. By choosing loyalty over schedule, he sacrificed at least twenty-four hours—perhaps more. The wager now hung by a thread of courage and devotion.

بعد أن شاهد الكولونيل بروكتور شجاعة فوج، أجل المباراة مؤقتاً. ومع ثلاثين جندياً وكشافاً من فورت كيرني، تم إعداد خطة إنقاذ. طلب فوج من أودا البقاء مع فيكس والقطار، وقال للمحقق مباشرة: «السيد فيكس، سأذهب أنا. وعليك أن تبقى مع أودا حتى أعود» وافق فيكس على مضم.

دفع فوج للكشافة بسخاء وانطلق إلى البرية. كان عليه أن يصل إلى نيويورك قبل 11 ديسمبر. وباختياره الوفاء بدلاً من الجدول الزمني، ضحى بما لا يقل عن أربع وعشرين ساعة، وربما أكثر. وأصبح الرهان معلقاً بخيط رفيع من الشجاعة والإخلاص.

أسئلة الكتاب المدرسي مجابة (Answered) Open-Ended & Critical Thinking Questions

Answer the following questions

1 Why does the journey across America represent a major challenge for Phileas Fogg ?

Because it includes dangerous terrain, delays, attacks, and constant pressure of time .

لماذا تمثل الرحلة عبر أمريكا تحدياً كبيراً لفيلياس فوج ؟

لأنها تتضمن طرقاً خطيرة، وتأخيرات، وهجمات، وضغطاً مستمراً بسبب الوقت .

2 Why is the decision to cross the bridge at full speed significant ?

It shows Fogg's courage and trust in science to save time and lives .

لماذا كان قرار عبور الجسر بأقصى سرعة مهماً ؟

يظهر شجاعة فوج وثقته في العلم لإنقاذ الوقت والأرواح .

3 What does Fix's cooperation during the attack suggest ?

It suggests he has changed from an enemy into a reluctant ally .

ماذا يدل تعاون فيكس أثناء الهجوم ؟

يدل على تحوله من عدو إلى حليف على مضض .



4 How does Aouda influence Phileas Fogg emotionally ?

She softens him emotionally and strengthens his sense of honor and humanity .

كيف تؤثر أودا على فيلياس فوج عاطفياً ؟
تلين مشاعره وتُعزز إحساسه بالشرف والإنسانية .

5 How did Fogg's action during the Sioux attack (leaving the train to rescue Passepartout) contrast with his initial commitment to the wager ?

He put human loyalty above strict adherence to the wager .

كيف يتناقض تصرف فوج أثناء هجوم قبيلة السيو (مغادرته القطار لإنقاذ باسبارتو) مع التزامه الأولي بالرهان ؟
قدّم الولاء الإنساني على الالتزام الصارم بالرهان .

6 What specific dangers did the Transcontinental Railroad present to the travelers, and how did these reflect the time period ?

The railway faced attacks, incomplete infrastructure, and lawlessness .

ما الأخطار المحددة التي شكّلها خط السكك الحديدية العابرة للقارة على المسافرين، وكيف تعكس تلك الحقبّة الزمنية ؟
واجهت السكة الحديد هجمات وبنية غير مكتملة وانعدام الأمن .

7 How did Fogg demonstrate his calmness and decision-making skills during the crisis at the Platte River bridge ?

He assessed risks calmly and chose decisive action .

كيف أظهر فوج هدوءه ومهاراته في اتخاذ القرار أثناء أزمة جسر نهر بلات ؟
قيم المخاطر بهدوء واتخذ قراراً حاسماً .

8 Why was the loss of approximately thirty hours due to the rescue mission so devastating to Fogg's schedule ?

The delay severely threatened his remaining margin of time .

لماذا كان فقدان نحو ثلاثين ساعة بسبب مهمة الإنقاذ مدقراً للجدول فوج ؟
هدّد التأخير الهامش الزمني المتبقي لديه بشدة .

9 What did the encounter with the buffalo herd reveal about the contrast between man-made schedules and the unpredictability of nature ?

Nature easily disrupted human plans and timetables .

ماذا كشف لقاء قطيع الجاموس عن التناقض بين الجداول البشرية وعدم قابلية الطبيعة للتوقع ؟
عطّلت الطبيعة الخطط والجداول البشرية بسهولة .

10 If you were Fix, would you have joined Fogg on the rescue mission, and why or why not ?

Joining was necessary to secure the arrest later .

لو كنت مكان فيكس، هل كنت ستتنضم إلى فوج في مهمة الإنقاذ، ولماذا ؟
كان الانضمام ضرورياً لضمان الاعتقال لاحقاً .



11 Why was crossing the Platte River bridge so dangerous, and how was it handled ?

Because the bridge was weak and unstable, so the train crossed it at full speed .

لماذا كان عبور جسر نهر بلات خطيرًا، وكيف تم التعامل معه ؟
لأن الجسر كان ضعيفًا وغير مستقر، فتم عبوره بأقصى سرعة لتفادي انهياره .

12 Why did Fogg decide to lead the rescue mission himself instead of waiting ?

Because he felt morally responsible for Passepartout and refused to abandon him .

لماذا قرر فوج قيادة مهمة الإنقاذ بنفسه بدلًا من الانتظار ؟
لأنه شعر بمسؤولية أخلاقية تجاه باسبارتو ورفض التخلي عنه .

13 Do you agree with Fogg's decision to prioritize rescuing Passepartout over maintaining his schedule? Why or why not ?

Yes, because human loyalty and friendship are more important than winning a bet .

هل توافق على قرار فوج بتفضيل إنقاذ باسبارتو على الالتزام بالجدول الزمني؟ ولماذا ؟
نعم، لأن الوفاء والصداقة الإنسانية أهم من الفوز برهان .

Shaimaa Farghally
Shaimaa Farghally
Shaimaa Farghally

Shaimaa Farghally
Shaimaa Farghally
Shaimaa Farghally



Chapter (11)

The Race for the Henrietta: New York to Liverpool

السباق من أجل هنرييتا - من نيويورك إلى ليفربول

Vocabulary

wilderness	برية	virtue	فضيلة	pursuit	مطاردة
relief	ارتياح	surrender	يستسلم	drift	ينجرف
regain	يستعيد	expense	تكلفة	disaster	كارثة
charter	يستأجر (سفينة)	tempt	يغوي	negotiate	يتفاوض
divert	يغير المسار	hull	هيكل (السفينة)	fleeting	عابر
relentless	بلا توقف	irritable	سريع الغضب	outweigh	يفوق
retreat	ينسحب	dread	رعب	seize	يغتتم
purchase	شراء	mutiny	تمرد	furnace	فرن
terminal	محطة	stun	يذهل	grizzled	أشيب

reinforcements

تعزيزات

Idioms & Expressions التعبيرات والاصطلاحات

Imperturbable air	هدوء وثبات في المواقف الصعبة
The law was sacrosanct	القانون مقدس ويجب احترامه
Sealed their own fate	تسببوا في مصيرهم بأفعالهم
A collective gasp	دهشة أو شهقة جماعية

Chapter 11 in Points الفصل الحادي عشر في نقاط

- Phileas Fogg rushed into the wilderness to rescue Passepartout. فيليس فوغ اندفع إلى البرية لإنقاذ باسبارتو.
- The train was damaged, so Fogg and soldiers went on, leaving Aouda and Fix. تضرر القطار، فتابع فوغ والجنود الرحلة وتركوا أودا وفيكس.
- Fogg followed the Sioux tracks through the night. تتبع فوغ آثار السيُو خلال الليل.
- He found Passepartout tied and freed him. وجد باسبارتو مقيدًا وحرره.
- The engine returned with reinforcements. عاد المحرك مع تعزيزات عسكرية.



- ⚡ Aouda and Fix were relieved to see Fogg and Passepartout safe.
شعر أودا وفيكس بالارتياح لرؤية فوغ وباسبارتو بأمان.
- ⚡ Fogg realized he lost 30 hours.
أدرك فوغ أنه خسر ثلاثين ساعة.
- ⚡ He decided to go to Omaha, Nebraska.
قرر التوجه إلى أوماها، نبراسكا.
- ⚡ He hired a wind-sledge and its driver, Mudge.
استأجر مزلجة رياح وسائقها مدج.
- ⚡ They traveled fast across the frozen land.
سافروا بسرعة عبر الأرض المتجمدة.
- ⚡ They reached Omaha in time for the Chicago train.
وصلوا أوماها في وقت مغادرة القطار إلى شيكاغو.
- ⚡ They reached New York but missed the ship to Liverpool.
وصلوا نيويورك لكنهم فاتهم القارب إلى ليفربول.
- ⚡ Fogg took Aouda and Passepartout to a hotel.
أخذ فوغ أودا وباسبارتو إلى فندق.
- ⚡ He found a ship called the Henrietta.
وجد سفينة اسمها هنرييتا.
- ⚡ The captain refused, so Fogg planned secretly.
رفض القبطان، فخطط فوغ سراً.
- ⚡ He ordered the crew to change course to Liverpool.
أمر الطاقم بتغيير المسار نحو ليفربول.
- ⚡ They ran out of coal.
نفد الفحم من السفينة.
- ⚡ Fogg used the ship's wooden parts as fuel.
أمر فوغ بحرق أجزاء خشبية من السفينة كوقود.
- ⚡ They reached Queenstown, then Liverpool.
وصلوا كوينزتاون ثم ليفربول.
- ⚡ Fogg realized he returned to England in time.
أدرك فوغ أنه عاد إلى إنجلترا في الوقت المناسب.

القيم في هذا الفصل Values in This Chapter

Respect for the law

احترام القانون

Fogg follows the officers without resistance, showing discipline and acceptance of legal authority.

يطيع فوج الضباط دون مقاومة، مُظهرًا الانضباط واحترام السلطة القانونية.

Using wealth responsibly

استخدام المال بحكمة

Fogg spends enormous sums not to show off, but to save time and protect his companions.

ينفق فوج مبالغ ضخمة ليس للتباهي، بل لإنقاذ الوقت وحماية رفاقه.

Moral courage

الشجاعة الأخلاقية

Fogg proves that saving a life is more important than winning a wager.

يثبت فوج أن إنقاذ حياة إنسان أهم من الفوز برهان.

Honesty and responsibility

الصدق وتحمل المسؤولية

Passepartout admits his mistake openly, without excuses, accepting the consequences of his actions.

يعترف باسبارتو بخطئه بصراحة دون أعذار، ويتحمل نتائج أفعاله.



ترجمة الفصل Chapter Translation

الإنقاذ وضياع وسيلة السفر The Rescue and the Missed Connection

Phileas Fogg, accompanied by the courageous soldiers and Colonel Stamp Proctor, plunged into the freezing American wilderness to rescue his loyal valet, Passepartout. They had departed on the evening of December 6th, leaving Aouda, Fix, and the remaining passengers behind with the damaged train carriages.

Guided by loyal frontier scouts that momentarily outpaced even his legendary punctuality, Fogg pressed forward through the night. They followed the faint tracks left by the retreating Sioux, moving across rugged plains filled with danger and uncertainty.



اندفع فيلياس فوج، برفقة الجنود الشجعان والكولونيل ستامب بروكتور، إلى البرية الأمريكية المتجمدة لإنقاذ خادمه الوفي باسبارتو. وكانوا قد انطلقوا مساء ٦ ديسمبر، تاركين أودا وفيكس وبقية الركاب خلفهم مع عربات القطار المعطلة.. وبمساعدة كشافة أوفياء من الحدود، تفوقوا مؤقتًا حتى على التزام فوج الأسطوري بالوقت، وواصل التقدم طوال الليل. اتبعوا آثار السيو المنسحبين، عابرين سهولًا وعرة مليئة بالمخاطر وعدم اليقين.

After nearly twenty-four hours of relentless pursuit and a brief but fierce clash, a small group of warriors was discovered near a deserted Sioux encampment. Through a daring and silent maneuver, they distracted the guards long enough for Fogg to slip in and rescue Passepartout. The escape was swift and successful.

By the time they returned to the train station, the engine had already departed with reinforcements from a nearby military post. Aouda and Fix were overwhelmed with relief when they saw Fogg and Passepartout return safely. Their reunion, however, came from very different hearts—Aouda from gratitude and admiration, Fix from relief that his arrest hopes were still alive.

But joy quickly turned to dread. Fogg checked his watch: it was the evening of December 7th. The Transcontinental Express was gone, and the next train would arrive far too late. The wager seemed ruined.

بعد ما يقرب من أربع وعشرين ساعة من المطاردة المتواصلة واشتباك قصير عنيف، تم العثور على مجموعة صغيرة من المحاربين قرب معسكر مهجور للسيو. ومن خلال مناورة جريئة وصامتة، تم تشتيت الحراس بما يكفي ليتمكن فوج من التسلل وإنقاذ باسبارتو. وكان الهروب سريعًا وناجحًا. عندما عادوا إلى محطة القطار، كان المحرك قد غادر بالفعل لجلب تعزيزات من موقع عسكري قريب. شعرت أودا وفيكس براحة كبيرة عندما رآيا فوج وباسبارتو يعودان سالمين. لكن هذا اللقاء جاء بدوافع مختلفة، فأودا بدافع الامتنان والإعجاب، وفيكس بدافع الراحة لأن آماله في القبض على فوج لم تنته بعد. لكن الفرج تحول سريعًا إلى خوف. نظر فوج إلى ساعته، فكانت تشير إلى مساء ٧ ديسمبر. كان القطار العابر للقارات قد غادر، ولن يصل القطار التالي إلا بعد فوات الأوان. بدا الرهان وكأنه ضاع.

Shaimaa Farghally



The Wind-Sledge Solution حل الزلاجة الهوائية Shaimaa Farghally

Fogg, refusing to surrender, immediately sought an alternative plan. The remaining passengers informed him that the next major station—Omaha, Nebraska—was only by crossing open prairie now dusted with snow.

A captain from the military post explained that horses would move too slowly through the deep drifts. But he offered an unusual alternative: a wind-sledge, a light vehicle fitted with runners and a tall sail, used by hunters to cross frozen ground at remarkable speeds.

Fogg seized the opportunity. He hired the sledge and its driver, Mudge, at a staggering price. A powerful eastward wind filled the sail and carried them forward at astonishing speeds.



رفض فوج الاستسلام، وبحث فوراً عن حل بديل. وأخبره الركاب المتبقون أن أقرب محطة رئيسية، أوماها في نبراسكا، لا يمكن الوصول إليها إلا بعبور سهول مفتوحة مغطاة بالثلوج. شرح أحد ضباط الموقع العسكري أن الخيول ستكون بطيئة جداً في الثلوج العميقة، لكنه عرض بديلاً غير مألوف، وهو زلاجة هوائية خفيفة مزودة بزلاجات وشرع طويل، يستخدمها الصيادون لعبور الأرض المتجمدة بسرعات هائلة. انتهز فوج الفرصة، واستأجر الزلاجة وسائقها ماذج مقابل مبلغ ضخم. وملاً الريح الشرقية القوية الشرع، دافعة إياهم بسرعات مذهلة.

Fogg, Aouda, Passepartout, and Fix climbed aboard the small, uncomfortable craft. The ride was bitterly cold yet thrilling. The sledge raced across the frozen prairie, gliding over snow with astonishing speed.

They reached Omaha just as the first Chicago-bound train was departing. Fogg had regained much of the lost time through sheer determination — and expense. From Omaha they sped to Chicago, and from Chicago, they caught a direct express to New York.

The journey was swift but tense. Fix grew increasingly anxious. Passepartout did everything he could to encourage his master, and Aouda watched over Fogg with quiet, unwavering concern. They crossed America's vast interior, passed the Great Lakes, and entered the bustling stretch of the eastern states.

صعد فوج وأودا وباسبارتو وفيكس إلى المركبة الصغيرة غير المريحة. كانت الرحلة شديدة البرودة لكنها مثيرة. اندفعت الزلاجة فوق السهول المتجمدة، منزلقة فوق الثلج بسرعة مذهلة.

وصلوا إلى أوماها في اللحظة التي كان فيها أول قطار متجه إلى شيكاغو على وشك المغادرة. وكان فوج قد عوّض معظم الوقت الضائع بعزمته الخالصة - وبالإنفاق الكبير. ومن أوماها انطلقوا إلى شيكاغو، ومنها استقلوا قطاراً سريعاً مباشراً إلى نيويورك.

كانت الرحلة سريعة ولكن مشحونة بالتوتر. ازداد قلق فيكس يوماً بعد يوم. وبذل باسبارتو كل ما في وسعه لتشجيع سيده، بينما راقبت أودا فوج باهتمام صامت لا يتزعزع. عبروا قلب أمريكا الشاسع، مروا بالبحيرات العظمى، ودخلوا المنطقة الشرقية الصاخبة.



الوصول إلى نيويورك - ١١ ديسمبر - Arrival in New York - December 11th

The group arrived in New York City at 11:45 a.m. on December 11th — an extraordinary recovery considering the Sioux attack.

Fogg rushed to the docks, certain that he would catch the White Star liner China, scheduled to sail for Liverpool at 12:00 p.m. He believed he had fifteen minutes to spare.

The docks were chaotic. After pushing through the crowds, Fogg reached the correct terminal—only to see the China steamer already disappearing into the harbor, its funnels trailing smoke. He had missed it by forty-five minutes.

This was the worst disaster yet. The next transatlantic ship would not depart for a week. Fogg could not afford even a single day's delay. His face momentarily showed distress, but only for a "We must find another means," he said simply. heartbeat .



وصلت المجموعة إلى مدينة نيويورك في الساعة ١١:٤٥ صباحاً يوم ١١ ديسمبر - وهو إنجاز مذهل بالنظر إلى هجوم قبيلة السيو. أسرع فوج إلى الميناء، واثقاً من أنه سيلحق بسفينة تشاينا التابعة لخط وايت ستار، والمقرر أن تبحر إلى ليفربول في الساعة ١٢ ظهراً. وكان يعتقد أن لديه خمس عشرة دقيقة إضافية. كان الميناء يعج بالفوضى، وبعد شق طريقه وسط الحشود، وصل فوج إلى الرصيف الصحيح، ليجد سفينة تشاينا قد غادرت بالفعل، ودخانها يتصاعد في الأفق. كان قد فاتته الموعد بخمس وأربعين دقيقة. كانت هذه أسوأ كارثة حتى الآن. لن تغادر أي سفينة أخرى عبر الأطلسي قبل أسبوع. لم يكن فوج يحتمل أي تأخير إضافي. وظهر الضيق على وجهه لحظة قصيرة فقط. قال ببساطة: «يجب أن نجد وسيلة أخرى»

الشراء اليائس لسفينة هنرييتا - The Desperate Purchase of the Henrietta

Fogg escorted Aouda and Passepartout to a small hotel and immediately began inspecting the docks for any ship capable of crossing the Atlantic.

At last, he found one: a three-masted schooner called the Henrietta, moored at Pier 11. It was small but sturdy, built for speed and used mainly for pilot duty or swift cargo runs.

Its captain, Andrew Speedy, was a grizzled, irritable man with little patience for negotiation.

"Captain Speedy," Fogg said without preamble. "I wish to charter your vessel to Liverpool."

Speedy burst into loud laughter.

"To Liverpool? The Henrietta is bound for Bordeaux — and she'll not change course for any price."



اصطحب فوج أودا وباسبارتو إلى فندق صغير، وبدأ فوراً في تفقد الأرصفة بحثاً عن أي سفينة قادرة على عبور المحيط الأطلسي. وأخيراً، وجد واحدة: مركب شرابي بثلاثة صواري يُدعى هنرييتا، راسياً عند الرصيف رقم ١١. كانت السفينة صغيرة لكنها متينة، مصممة للسرعة، وتستخدم أساساً في خدمات الإرشاد أو لنقل البضائع بسرعة. وكان قبطانها، أندرو سبيدي، رجلاً أشيب سريع الغضب، قليل الصبر على التفاوض. قال فوج دون مقدمات: «كابتن سبيدي، أرغب في استئجار سفينتك إلى ليفربول». انفجر سبيدي ضاحكاً بصوت عالٍ.. «إلى ليفربول؟ هنرييتا متجهة إلى بوردو - ولن تغير مسارها مقابل أي مبلغ.



Fogg immediately presented his famous bag of money.

“Two thousand pounds to take us to Liverpool.”

Speedy refused. He had a contract for Bordeaux.

Fogg raised the stakes.

“Two thousand to take us to Bordeaux, and another two thousand to take us on to Liverpool.”

The captain, stunned by the enormous sum, agreed — but only to take them as passengers and only on the Bordeaux route. Fogg paid at once and returned for his companions.

That evening, the four boarded the Henrietta. Captain Speedy, though enriched, was irritable and deeply suspicious.

أخرج فوج على الفور حقيبته الشهيرة المملوءة بالمال

«ألفا جنيه لتأخذنا إلى ليفربول».

رفض سبيدي، إذ كان لديه عقد متجه إلى بوردو.

زاد فوج العرض

«ألفا جنيه لتأخذنا إلى بوردو، وألفان إضافيان لتوصلنا إلى ليفربول»

ذهل القبطان من ضخامة المبلغ ووافق – لكن فقط على أن يكونوا ركاباً وعلى طريق بوردو فقط.

دفع فوج المبلغ فوراً وعاد ليصطحب رفاقه.

في تلك الليلة، صعد الأربعة إلى متن هنرييتا.

ورغم أن القبطان سبيدي أصبح غنياً، إلا أنه ظل غاضباً وممتلئاً بالشك.

التمرد والنار The Mutiny and the Fire

The Henrietta sailed from New York on the night of December 11th.

Soon, Fogg realized Captain Speedy would never willingly divert toward Liverpool. So he prepared an even bolder plan.

“I wish to buy your ship,” he said calmly. Speedy laughed. Fogg increased his offer.

Speedy refused again.

أبحرت هنرييتا من نيويورك ليلة ١١ ديسمبر. وسرعان ما أدرك فوج أن القبطان سبيدي لن يغير

مساره طوعاً نحو ليفربول، فاستعد لخطة أكثر جرأة.

قال فوج بهدوء: «أرغب في شراء سفينتك»

ضحك سبيدي. زاد فوج عرضه. رفض سبيدي مرة أخرى.



Realizing negotiation was hopeless, Fogg quietly spoke with the crew. Tempted by generous bonuses, they agreed to support him.

Fogg then invited Captain Speedy to his cabin for a drink. He offered him a particularly strong brandy, and the captain soon fell into a heavy, helpless sleep.

With Speedy unconscious, Fogg assumed command. He ordered the crew—now loyal to his purse—to change course toward Liverpool. The captain awoke two days later, locked in his cabin and furious, but powerless.

حين أدرك فوج أن التفاوض أصبح بلا جدوى، تحدث بهدوء مع أفراد الطاقم. وبإغرائهم بمكافآت سخية، وافقوا على دعمه.

ثم دعا فوج القبطان سبيدي إلى مقصورته لتناول مشروب، وقدم له نوعاً قوياً جداً من البراندي، فسرعان ما غرق القبطان في نوم عميق لا حيلة له فيه.

ومع فقدان سبيدي للوعي، تولّى فوج القيادة. وأمر الطاقم – الذي أصبح ولاءه لماله – بتغيير المسار نحو ليفربول. وبعد يومين، استيقظ القبطان ليجد نفسه محبوساً في مقصورته، غاضباً لكنه عاجزاً عن فعل أي شيء.



حرق السفينة لتوليد البخار Burning the Ship for Steam

Mid-Atlantic, another crisis struck: the coal was running low. Strong headwinds consumed fuel at a rapid pace. The engineer warned Fogg that they would never reach Ireland—not with the remaining coal.

Fogg made his most astonishing decision yet. He summoned Captain Speedy, now defeated, and said: "I will pay you one thousand pounds for the remainder of your vessel — everything except the engine and iron framework."

He intended to burn the ship itself.

Speedy, overwhelmed by the money and the madness of the plan, accepted. Fogg immediately ordered the crew to dismantle the wooden masts, cabins, deck structures, and railings. All were fed into the furnace.



في منتصف المحيط الأطلسي، وقعت أزمة جديدة: بدأ الفحم ينفد. كانت الرياح المعاكسة القوية تستهلك الوقود بسرعة كبيرة. حذر المهندس فوج من أنهم لن يتمكنوا من الوصول إلى أيرلندا بما تبقى من الفحم. اتخذ فوج قراره الأكثر إدهاشاً حتى الآن. استدعى القبطان سبيدي، الذي أصبح الآن مهزوماً، وقال له: «سأدفع لك ألف جنيه مقابل بقية السفينة – كل شيء عدا المحرك والإطار الحديدي». لقد نوى حرق السفينة نفسها.

اندهش سبيدي من المبلغ وجنون الخطة، فوافق. أمر فوج الطاقم على الفور بتفكيك الصواري الخشبية، والكابتن، والهياكل على سطح السفينة، والسيارات. وتم إلقاء كل ذلك في الفرن.

The Henrietta became a roaring furnace blazing across the Atlantic. The ship grew lighter and faster but also smaller with every hour. By the time they sighted the Irish coast, only an iron shell remained.

They reached Queenstown Harbor on the morning of December 20th. Fogg sold the remaining iron hull to a junk dealer and hurried with his companions by train to Dublin. From there they crossed the Irish Sea on a fast ferry and reached Liverpool on the morning of December 21st. Fogg checked his watch: 11:40 a.m. He still had nine hours and five minutes to reach the Reform Club.

As they stepped onto the platform, a rare, fleeting smile touched Fogg's lips. He had done it. He had returned to England in time.

تحولت هنرييتا إلى فرن مشتعل يندفع عبر الأطلسي. أصبحت السفينة أخف وأسرع، لكنها كانت تصغر في الحجم كل ساعة. وعندما لمحوا الساحل الأيرلندي، لم يتبق منها سوى هيكل حديدي فقط.

وصلوا إلى ميناء كوينزتاون في صباح يوم ٢٠ ديسمبر. باع فوج الهيكل الحديدي المتبقي لتاجر خردة، وسافر مع رفاقه بالقطار إلى دبلن. ومن هناك عبروا البحر الأيرلندي على متن عبارة سريعة، ووصلوا إلى ليفربول في صباح يوم ٢١ ديسمبر.

نظر فوج إلى ساعته: كانت تشير إلى الساعة ١١:٤٠ صباحاً. لا يزال أمامه تسع ساعات وخمس دقائق للوصول إلى نادي الإصلاح. وعندما نزلوا إلى رصيف المحطة، ارتسمت على شفتي فوج ابتسامة نادرة وخاطفة. لقد فعلها. لقد عاد إلى إنجلترا في الوقت المناسب.



أسئلة الكتاب المدرسي مجابة (Answered) Open-Ended & Critical Thinking Questions

Answer the following questions

1 How does the rescue mission change the course of the journey ?

It delays Fogg's journey but proves his courage and loyalty over time and money .

كيف غيرت مهمة الإنقاذ مسار الرحلة ؟
أخرت مهمة الإنقاذ رحلة فوج، لكنها أثبتت شجاعته ووفاءه فوق الوقت والمال .

2 How does the wind-sledge symbolize Phileas Fogg's character ?

It shows his determination, creativity, and willingness to take risks to succeed .

كيف ترمز الزلاجة الهوائية إلى شخصية فيلياس فوج ؟
ترمز الزلاجة إلى عزمته وابتكاره واستعداده للمخاطرة من أجل النجاح .

3 Why is missing the China described as the worst disaster yet ?

Because missing it meant a week's delay, which could cost Fogg the entire wager .

لماذا وُصف فوات سفينة تشاينا بأنه أسوأ كارثة حتى الآن ؟
لأن فواتها يعني تأخير أسبوع كامل قد يضيع على فوج الرهان كله .

4 Why is Captain Speedy difficult to negotiate with ?

He is stubborn, bad-tempered, and bound by a contract to sail to Bordeaux .

لماذا كان الكابتن سبيدي صعب التفاوض معه ؟
لأنه عنيد وسريع الغضب وملتمزم بعقد للإبحار إلى بوردو .

5 How does money influence events aboard the Henrietta ?

Money allows Fogg to control the crew, the ship, and ultimately save his journey .

كيف أثر المال على الأحداث فوق سفينة هنرييتا ؟
مكن المال فوج من السيطرة على الطاقم والسفينة وإنقاذ رحلته في النهاية .

6 How did Fogg successfully recover much of the time lost during the thirty-hour rescue mission ?

He compensated by using faster transport and decisive actions .

كيف استطاع فوج استعادة جزء كبير من الوقت الذي فقد خلال مهمة الإنقاذ التي استمرت ثلاثين ساعة ؟
عوض ذلك باستخدام وسائل نقل أسرع وقرارات حاسمة .

7 What does Fogg's decision to burn the ship's wooden structure for fuel reveal about his commitment to the wager and his view of financial loss ?

Time mattered more to him than money .

ماذا يكشف قرار فوج بحرق هيكل السفينة الخشبي كوقود عن التزامه بالرهان ونظرته للخسارة المالية ؟
كان الوقت أهم لديه من المال .



8 If Fogg had arrived two hours earlier, how would the encounter with Fix in Liverpool likely have played out differently ?

He might have avoided arrest entirely .

لو وصل فوج قبل ساعتين، كيف كان من المحتمل أن يختلف لقاءه مع فيكس في ليفربول ؟
ربما كان سيتجنب الاعتقال تمامًا .

9 What does Fogg's calm acceptance of his arrest reveal about his adherence to the rule of law, even when he knows he is innocent ?

He respected the law above personal injustice .

ذا يكشف تقبل فوج الهادئ لاعتقاله عن التزامه بالقانون رغم علمه ببراءته ؟
احترم القانون فوق الظلم الشخصي .

10 What sacrifices did Fogg make to ensure they crossed the Atlantic in time ?

He spent a huge amount of money and burned the ship itself as fuel .

ما التضحيات التي قدمها فوج لضمان عبور المحيط الأطلسي في الوقت المناسب ؟
أنفق فوج مبالغ طائلة، بل وأحرق السفينة نفسها لتكون وقودًا .

11 Why did Fogg attempt to buy the Henrietta, and how did the situation with Captain Speedy escalate ?

He needed a ship to reach England quickly, but Speedy refused, leading Fogg to take control .

لماذا حاول فوج شراء سفينة هنرييتا، وكيف تصاعد الموقف مع الكابتن سبيدي ؟
احتاج فوج سفينة للوصول إلى إنجلترا سريعًا، لكن سبيدي رفض، مما دفع فوج للسيطرة على السفينة .

12 Was it ethical for Fogg to drug Captain Speedy and take control of the Henrietta? Defend your opinion .

It was unethical, but Fogg believed it was necessary to save his mission .

هل كان تصرف فوج أخلاقيًا عندما خدر الكابتن سبيدي وسيطر على السفينة؟ وضح رأيك .
كان تصرفًا غير أخلاقي، لكن فوج اعتبره ضروريًا لإنقاذ مهمته .

Shaimaa Farghally
Shaimaa Farghally
Shaimaa Farghally



Chapter (12)

The Final Hour: Arrest, Proposal, and Victory

الساعة الأخيرة - القبض، العرض، والانتصار

Vocabulary

victory (n)	نصر	precision (n)	دقة	deadline (n)	موعد نهائي
declare (v)	يعلن	authority (n)	سلطة	hostile (adj)	عدائي
tension (n)	توتر	lunge (v)	يندفع	traitor (n)	خائن
submit (v)	يخضع	detention (n)	احتجاز	unjust (adj)	ظالم
mock (v)	يسخر من	guilt (n)	شعور بالذنب	risk (v)	مخاطرة
criminal (n)	مجرم	retrieve (v)	يسترجع	ensure (v)	يضمن
defeat (v)	يهزم	nerves (n)	أعصاب	blur (v)	يمر بسرعة
accusation (n)	اتهام	imprisonment (n)	سجن		
embarrass (v)	يحرج	chronometer (n)	ساعة توقيت		
brass (adj)	نحاسي	culprit (n.)	جاني		

Idioms & Expressions التعبيرات والاصطلاحات

At the eleventh hour	في اللحظة الأخيرة
A flicker of resentment	لمحة سريعة من الغضب أو الضيق
Burst into tears	انفجر بالبكاء
Seizing the moment	اغتنام الفرصة في الوقت المناسب
With the speed of a projectile	بسرعة شديدة جدًا

Chapter 12 in Points الفصل الثاني عشر في نقاط

- Phileas Fogg, Aouda, Passepartout, and Detective Fix arrived in Liverpool early.
وصل فوغ وأودا وباسبارتو والمفتش فيكس إلى ليفربول في وقت مبكر.
- Fogg calculated connections to London, knowing his deadline.
حسب فوغ الوقت المتبقي للوصول إلى لندن وعرف الموعد النهائي.
- Detective Fix arrested Fogg, thinking he was the bank robber.
ألقي المفتش فيكس القبض على فوغ معتقداً أنه السارق.
- Passepartout angrily accused Fix, but Fogg asked to submit to law.
اتهم باسبارتو المفتش بغضب، لكن فوغ طلب الخضوع للقانون.



- ⚡ Fogg was taken to the Custom House for detention. تم اقتياد فوغ إلى الجمارك لاحتجازه.
- ⚡ His honor was questioned due to an unjust accusation. شكك في شرفه بسبب اتهام ظالم.
- ⚡ Fogg checked his watch and felt mocked by time. نظر فوغ إلى ساعته وشعر وكأن الوقت يسخر منه.
- ⚡ Aouda blamed herself, thinking Fogg sacrificed for her. ألقت أودا اللوم على نفسها معتقدة أن فوغ ضحى من أجلها.
- ⚡ Passepartout cried but believed in Fogg's honor. بكى باسبارتو لكنه كان مؤمناً بشرف فوغ.
- ⚡ At 5:30 p.m., Fix returned and admitted his mistake. عاد فيكس الساعة ٥:٣٠ مساءً واعترف بخطئه.
- ⚡ The real thief was caught 72 hours ago in Brighton. قبض على السارق الحقيقي منذ ٧٢ ساعة في برايتون.
- ⚡ Fogg was released and took a special train to London. تم إطلاق سراح فوغ واستقل قطاراً خاصاً إلى لندن.
- ⚡ He reached the Reform Club at 8:44 p.m. وصل إلى نادي الإصلاح في الساعة ٨:٤٤ مساءً.
- ⚡ He announced, "Gentlemen, I am here." أعلن بهدوء: «سيداتي سادتي، أنا هنا».
- ⚡ By crossing the date line, he gained a day. بفضل عبوره خط التاريخ الدولي، كسب يوماً إضافياً.
- ⚡ He completed the journey in 79 days, 23 hours, 59 minutes. أكمل الرحلة في ٧٩ يوماً و٢٣ ساعة و٥٩ دقيقة.
- ⚡ Though he lost fortune, he proposed to Aouda. رغم خسارته للمال، عرض الزواج على أودا.
- ⚡ The journey ended in victory and happiness. انتهت الرحلة بالنصر والسعادة.

القيم في هذا الفصل Values in This Chapter

Respect for the law

احترام القانون

Fogg submits calmly to arrest, demonstrating discipline and honor despite injustice.

يخضع فوج للقبض عليه بهدوء، فُظهرًا الانضباط والشرف رغم الظلم.

Patience and composure

الصبر وضبط النفس

He remains poised under imprisonment and the looming deadline.

يظل ثابتاً ومتماسكاً رغم السجن وضغط الوقت.

Loyalty and devotion

الوفاء والإخلاص

Passepartout and Aouda stand by Fogg, supporting him

يقف باسبارتو وأودا إلى جانب فوج ويدعمونه نفسياً.

Integrity and fairness

النزاهة والعدل

Fogg holds Fix accountable

يُحمل فوج فيكس المسؤولية المالية دون كراهية أو انتقام.

Love and selflessness

الحب ونكران الذات

Fogg values Aouda's happiness over wealth or pride.

يقدم فوج سعادة أودا على المال أو الكبرياء.

Perseverance and ingenuity

المثابرة والذكاء

He overcomes time and logistical challenges to triumph.

يتغلب فوج على تحديات الزمن والظروف لينتصر.



Chapter Translation الفصل

The Rescue and the Missed Connection الإنقاذ وضياع الفرصة

The morning air in Liverpool was crisp, tinged with the smell of coal smoke from the bustling docks. Phileas Fogg, Aouda, Passepartout, and Detective Fix stepped onto the platform of the busy Liverpool train station on Saturday, December 21st. Fogg's eyes scanned the horizon with his usual calm precision, already calculating connections to London. The journey around the world had brought him back to British soil with barely nine hours to spare before his 8:45 p.m. deadline at the Reform Club.



Fix, his patience exhausted after months of following Fogg across continents, saw his opportunity. With a heavy hand, he clapped Fogg on the shoulder. "Mr. Phileas Fogg," he declared, voice sharp with authority, "you are under arrest!"

كان هواء الصباح في ليفربول باردًا، ممزوجًا برائحة دخان الفحم من الموانئ المزدهمة. صعد فيلياس فوج وأودا وباسبارتو والمحقق فيكس إلى رصيف محطة قطار ليفربول المزدهمة يوم السبت ٢١ ديسمبر. جالت عينا فوج الأفق يهدوئه المعتاد، وهو يحسب بالفعل مواعيد الوصول إلى لندن. كانت الرحلة حول العالم قد أعادته إلى أرض بريطانيا ولم يتبق له سوى تسع ساعات تقريبًا قبل مواعيد النهائي الساعة ٨:٤٥ مساءً في نادي الإصلاح. رأى فيكس، الذي نفذ صبره بعد شهور من ملاحقة فوج عبر القارات، فرصته أخيرًا. وضع يده بقوة على كتف فوج وقال بصوت حازم: السيد فيلياس فوج، «أنت قيد القبض».

Fogg, unshaken by storms, shipwrecks, and hostile lands, felt a rare flicker of tension cross his usually composed face. Passepartout, boiling with anger, lunged at Fix. "Ah, Monsieur Fix! You knew it all along! You traitor!"

"Passepartout, calm yourself," Fogg said, his voice steady. "We must submit to the law."

Fix hurried Fogg to the Custom House for formal detention, leaving Aouda and Passepartout heartbroken on the platform. Fogg's fortune seemed lost, his honor questioned, and his meticulous plans threatened by an unjust accusation.

شعر فوج، الذي لم تهزه العواصف ولا حطام السفن ولا الأراضي المعادية، بومضة توتر نادرة على وجهه الهادئ؛ اندفع باسبارتو غاضبًا نحو فيكس صارخًا: «آه يا سيد فيكس! كنت تعرف كل شيء منذ البداية! أيها الخائن». قال فوج بصوت ثابت: «باسبارتو، اهدأ. يجب أن نُسَلِّم أنفسنا للقانون». سارع فيكس بأخذ فوج إلى دار الجمارك للاحتجاز الرسمي، تاركًا أودا وباسبارتو محطمين على الرصيف. بدا أن ثروة فوج قد ضاعت، وشرفه أصبح موضع شك، وخططه الدقيقة مهددة باتهام ظالم.

Shaimaa Farghally
Shaimaa Farghally
Shaimaa Farghally



السجن واليأس Imprisonment and Despair

Inside the stark, quiet cell, Fogg was fingerprinted, booked, and left alone. He sat with perfect composure, though his mind raced through the chain of events that had led him here. He glanced at his watch: 1:30 p.m. Time, which he had measured so precisely, now mocked him.

Outside, Passepartout and Aouda waited anxiously. Aouda, though unfamiliar with English law, felt the weight of guilt. "It is because of me," she whispered to Passepartout. "We risked everything for my safety, and now he suffers."

Passepartout's loyalty wavered for the briefest moment. Could his master truly be a criminal? Yet deep down, he knew Fogg's honor was absolute.



داخل الزنزانة القاسية الهادئة، تم تسجيل بيانات فوج وأُخذت بصماته وترك وحيداً. جلس بهدوء تام، بينما كان عقله يستعرض تسلسل الأحداث التي أوصلته إلى هذا الموقف. نظر إلى ساعته، كانت تشير إلى ١:٣٠ ظهراً. الزمن، الذي كان يقيسه بدقة شديدة، أصبح الآن يسخر منه. في الخارج، انتظر باسبارتو وأودا بقلق شديد. شعرت أودا، رغم عدم معرفتها بالقانون الإنجليزي، بثقل الذنب. همست لباسبارتو: «هذا بسببي. خاطر بكل شيء من أجل سلامتي، والآن هو يعاني». ترزعزع ولاء باسبارتو للحظة قصيرة. هل يمكن أن يكون سيده مجرماً حقاً؟ لكنه في أعماقه كان يعلم أن شرف فوج لا يُشك فيه.

الجاني الحقيقي وإطلاق سراح فوج The True Culprit and Fogg's Release

At 5:30 p.m., Fix returned, pale and shaken. "Sir," he stammered, bowing, "there has been a grave mistake. The real Bank of England robber, James Strand, was arrested in Brighton seven-and-twenty hours ago. The money has been recovered."

Fogg raised an eyebrow, calm as ever. "You may leave, Mr. Fix. The warrant is no longer valid."

Fogg retrieved the 2,000£ lost in Calcutta from his travel funds and handed it to Fix, ensuring responsibility was acknowledged without malice. Fix left defeated and embarrassed, while Fogg prepared for the final leg of his journey.



في الساعة ٥:٣٠ مساءً، عاد فيكس شاحباً ومضطرباً. قال متلعثماً وهو ينحني: «سيدي، لقد حدث خطأ جسيم. تم القبض على السارق الحقيقي لبنك إنجلترا، جيمس ستراند، في برايتون منذ سبع وعشرين ساعة، وتم استرداد الأموال». رفع فوج حاجبه بهدوء وقال: «يمكنك الانصراف يا سيد فيكس. لم يعد أمر القبض سارياً». استعاد فوج مبلغ الألفي جنيه الذي خسره في كلكتا من أمواله الخاصة وسلمه لفيكس، فظهرًا تحتمل المسؤولية دون حقد. غادر فيكس مهزولاً ومهرجاً، بينما استعد فوج للمرحلة الأخيرة من رحلته.

Shaimaa Farghally



The Race to London السباق إلى لندن

At 5:35 p.m., Fogg, Aouda, and Passepartout hurried to arrange a special train to London. The station buzzed with activity, and the delay of the private engine tested their nerves. Fogg watched his chronometer with precision, counting every second.

The train roared through the countryside, past rivers and towns, while Fogg's mind remained fixed on the Reform Club. They arrived at London's terminal at 8:40 p.m., leaving just five minutes to reach the brass doors of the Club.

A cab was hailed, and the streets of London blurred past them in a whirlwind of motion.



في الساعة ٥:٣٥ مساءً، أسرع فوج وأودا وباسبارتو لترتيب قطار خاص إلى لندن. كانت المحطة تعج بالحركة، وتأخر القطار الخاص اختبر أعصابهم. راقب فوج ساعته بدقة، محصيًا كل ثانية. اندفع القطار عبر الريف، فأزاح بالأنهار والمدن، بينما ظل عقل فوج متمسكاً ببنادي الإصلاح. وصلوا إلى محطة لندن في الساعة ٨:٤٠ مساءً، ولم يتبق سوى خمس دقائق للوصول إلى أبواب النادي النحاسية. تم استدعاء عربة، ومرت شوارع لندن أمامهم كدوامة من الحركة.

The Twist of Fate: The Lost Day مفاجأة القدر: اليوم المفقود

Passepartout, racing through the streets, realized something astonishing. By crossing the International Date Line eastward, they had gained a day. The Club's members believed it was Saturday, December 21st, but in reality, it was still Friday, December 20th. At 8:44 p.m., Fogg burst into the Reform Club. The five members stared in disbelief as Fogg calmly announced, "Gentlemen, I am here."

He had arrived with one minute to spare, completing his journey in seventy-nine days, twenty-three hours, and fifty-nine minutes.



أدرك باسبارتو، وهو يركض عبر الشوارع، أمراً مذهلاً. فبعبروهم خط التاريخ الدولي شرقاً، كانوا قد كسبوا يوماً كاملاً. كان أعضاء النادي يعتقدون أن اليوم هو السبت ٢١ ديسمبر، لكنه في الحقيقة كان لا يزال الجمعة ٢٠ ديسمبر.

في الساعة ٨:٤٤ مساءً، اندفع فوج إلى نادي الإصلاح. نظر الأعضاء الخمسة بدهشة بينما أعلن فوج بهدوء: «سادة، أنا هنا.» كان قد وصل قبل الموعد بدقيقة واحدة، فأكمل رحلته في تسعة وسبعين يوماً وثلاث وعشرين ساعة وتسع وخمسين دقيقة.

The Aftermath: Ruin and Proposal ما بعد ذلك: الخسارة والعرض

The next day, Fogg settled the accounts. The journey had cost 19,000£, leaving him with only a small portion of his original fortune. Yet he felt no regret.

Fogg proposed to Aouda, saying, "It would be a great honor for me if you became my wife." The wedding was arranged for the following morning, December 23rd, bringing a happy conclusion to the extraordinary eighty-day journey.



في اليوم التالي، أنهى فوج حساباته. كانت الرحلة قد كلفته تسعة عشر ألف جنيه، ولم يتبق له سوى جزء بسيط من ثروته الأصلية. ومع ذلك، لم يشعر بالندم. تقدم فوج لخطبة أودا قائلاً: «سيكون شرفاً عظيماً لي إذا أصبحت زوجتي.» وتم ترتيب الزواج في صباح اليوم التالي، ٢٣ ديسمبر، لتختتم الرحلة الاستثنائية التي استمرت ثمانين يوماً بنهاية سعيدة.



أسئلة الكتاب المدرسي مجابة (Answered Open -Ended & Critical Thinking Questions)

Answer the following questions

1 Why is Fogg's calm reaction to the arrest important to the chapter's message ?

It shows his self-control and respect for law even when facing injustice .

لماذا تُعد ردة فعل فوج الهادئة على القبض عليه مهمة لرسالة الفصل ؟
لأنها تظهر ضبطه لنفسه واحترامه للقانون حتى عند التعرض للظلم .

2 What does Passepartout's anger reveal about loyalty in the chapter ?

It shows deep loyalty and emotional devotion to his master .

ماذا يكشف غضب باسبارتو عن معنى الوفاء في الفصل ؟
يكشف عن وفاء عميق وإخلاص عاطفي كبير لسيده .

3 What does Fix's mistake show about human judgment ?

It shows that human judgment can be rushed and flawed .

ماذا يوضح خطأ فيكس عن الحكم البشري ؟
يوضح أن الحكم البشري قد يكون متسرعًا ومليئًا بالأخطاء .

4 Why does Fogg say, «We must submit to the law» ?

Because he believes respecting the law is more important than personal freedom .

لماذا قال فوج: «يجب أن نُسَلِّم أنفسنا للقانون» ؟
لأنه يؤمن بأن احترام القانون أهم من الحرية الشخصية .

5 How does Fogg's calm reaction reflect his values during the crisis of arrest ?

It reflects his belief in order, discipline, and moral integrity .

كيف تعكس ردة فعل فوج الهادئة قيمه أثناء أزمة القبض عليه ؟
تعكس إيمانه بالنظام والانضباط والنزاهة الأخلاقية .

6 How did the timing of the true robber's arrest serve as the greatest irony and tragedy of Fix's long pursuit ?

The real robber was arrested just after Fogg had been wrongly detained .

كيف مثل توقيت القبض على السارق الحقيقي أعظم مفارقة ومأساة في مطاردة فيكس الطويلة ؟
قبض على السارق الحقيقي بعد احتجاز فوج ظلماً مباشرة .

7 Why did Fix's arrest of Fogg in Liverpool completely fulfill his duty, even though he knew the warrant was likely still invalid ?

Fix believed duty required arrest regardless of doubt .

لماذا اعتُبر اعتقال فيكس لفوج في ليفربول أداءً كاملاً لواجبه رغم علمه باحتمال بطلان الأمر ؟
اعتقد فيكس أن الواجب يفرض الاعتقال مهما وُجد الشك .



8 Explain the simple yet profound reason why Fogg and Passepartout were convinced they had lost the wager .

They believed they were one day late .

أشرف السبب البسيط والعميق لاقتناع فوج وباسبارتو بخسارة الرهان .
اعتقدا أنهما تأخرا يوما كاملاً .

9 What two specific financial gains did Fogg grant Passepartout after winning the wager ?
He gave him a reward and paid his wages generously .

ما المكسبان الماليان المحددان اللذان منحهما فوج لباسبارتو بعد الفوز بالرهان ؟
منحه مكافأة وسدد أجره بسخاء .

10 How does the discovery of the lost day reinforce the novel's central theme of time? Why is the time gained by traveling east a critical piece of global knowledge ?

It proves time is relative and must be understood globally .

كيف يعزز اكتشاف اليوم المفقود موضوع الزمن في الرواية، ولماذا يُعد كسب اليوم بالسفر شرقاً معرفة حاسمة ؟
يثبت أن الزمن نسبي ويتطلب فهمًا عالميًا .

11 The novel ends not with the triumph of speed, but with the quiet victory of love. Evaluate the author's final message.

Human connection outweighs technical achievement .

تنتهي الرواية بانتصار الحب لا السرعة، قيم رسالة الكاتب النهائية .
العلاقات الإنسانية تفوق الإنجاز التقني .

12 How did Passepartout contribute to the discovery of the «lost day» ?

He realized they had gained a day by crossing the International Date Line eastward .

كيف ساهم باسبارتو في اكتشاف «اليوم المفقود» ؟
أدرك باسبارتو أنهم كسبوا يوماً كاملاً عند عبورهم خط التاريخ الدولي شرقاً .

13 Was it right for Fogg to forgive Fix so quickly? Why do you think he did ?

Yes, because Fogg values justice, calm judgment, and moving forward without hatred .

هل كان من الصواب أن يسامح فوج فيكس بسرعة؟ ولماذا تعتقد ذلك ؟
نعم، لأن فوج يُقدّر العدالة والحكم الهادئ والمضي قدماً دون حقد .

Shaimaa Farghally
Shaimaa Farghally
Shaimaa Farghally